

## Ancient India

## 1. Harappan/Indus Civilization (2500 BC-1750 BC)

- The oldest name—Indus Civilization.
- According to archaeological tradition, the most appropriate name—Harappan Civilization (Harappa—the first discovered site).
- According to geographical point of view, the most suitable name—Indus-Saraswati Civilization (the largest concentration of settlement along the Indus-Saraswati river valley; 80% settlement along the Saraswati).
- The most accepted period—2500 BC–1750 BC (by Carbon-14 dating).
- *John Marshall* was the first scholar to use the term 'Indus Civilization'.
- The Indus Civilization belongs to Proto-Historic Period (Chalcolithic Age/ Bronze Age).
- The Indus Civilization was spread over Sindh, Baluchistan, Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan, Gujarat, Western U.P. and Northern Maharashtra.
- Scholars generally believe that Harappa-Ghaggar-Mohenjodaro axis represents the heartland of the Indus Civilization.
- The Northern-most site of Indus Civilization—*Ropar* (Sutlej)/ Punjab (Earlier); *Manda* (Chenab)/ Jammu-Kashmir (Now).
- The Southern-most site of Indus Civilization—*Bhagatpura* (Kim)/ Gujarat (Earlier); *Daimabad* (Pravara)/ Maharashtra (Now).
- The Eastern-most site of Indus Civilization—*Alamgirpur* (Hindon)/ Uttar Pradesh.
- The Western-most site of Indus Civilization—*Sutkagendor* (Dashk)/ Makran Coast (Pakistan-Iran Border).

**Capital Cities**—Harappa, Mohenjodaro

**Port Cities**—Lothal, Sutkagendor, Allahdino, Balakot, Kuntasi

Site	River	District	State / Province	Country	Excavators
Harappa	Ravi	Sahiwal	Punjab	Pakistan	Daya Ram Sahni (1921), Madho Swaroop Vatsa (1926), Wheeler (1946)
Mohenjodaro (Nakhliстан i.e. Oasis of Sindh)	Indus	Larkana	Sindh	Pakistan	Rakhal Das Bannerji (1922), Mackay (1927) Wheeler (1930)
Chanhudaro	Indus	Nawabshah	Sindh	Pakistan	Mackay (1925), N.G. Mazumdar (1931)
Lothal	Bhogava	Ahmedabad	Gujarat	India	S.R. Rao (1954)
Kalibanga (i.e. the bangles of black colour)	Ghaggar	Hanumangarh	Rajasthan	India	Amalanand Ghosh (1951), B.V. Lal and B.K. Thapar (1961)
Banawali	Ghaggar	Fatehabad	Haryana	India	R. S. Bist (1973)
Dholavira	Luni	Kutchh	Gujarat	India	J.P. Joshi (1967-68)

Site	Archaeological Finds
Harappa	6 Granaries in row, Working floors, Workmen's quarters, Virgin-Goddess (seal), Cemetery (R-37, H), Stone symbols of Lingam (male sex organ) and Yoni (female sex organ), Painted pottery, Clay figures of Mother Goddess, Wheat and Barley in wooden mortar, Copper scale, Crucible for bronze, Copper-made mirror, Vanity box, Dice.
Mohenjodaro	Great Granary, Great Bath (the largest building of civilization), Assembly hall, Shell strips, Pashupati Mahadeva/Proto-Shiva (seal), Bronze Image of a nude woman dancer, Steatite image of bearded man, Human skeletons huddled together, Painted seal (Demi-God), Clay figures of Mother Goddess, A fragment of woven cotton, Brick Kilns, 2 Mesopotamian seals, 1398 seals (56% of total seals of civilization), Dice.
Chanhudaro	City without a citadel, Inkpot, Lipstick; Metal-workers', shell-ornament makers' and bead-makers' shops; Imprint of dog's paw on a brick, Terracotta model of a bullock cart, Bronze toy cart.
Lothal	Dockyard, Rice husk; Metal-workers', shell-ornament makers' and bead-makers' shops; Fire altars, Terracotta figurine of a horse, Double burial (burying a male and a female in a single grave), Terracotta model of a ship, Dying vat, Persian / Iranian seal, Baharaineian seal, Painted jar (bird and fox).
Kalibanga	Ploughed field surface (Pre-Harappan), 7 Fire altars, Decorated bricks, Wheels of a toy cart, Mesopotamian cylindrical seal.
Banawali	Lack of chess-board or gridiron pattern town planning, Lack of systematic drainage system, Toy plough, Clay figures of Mother Goddess.
Dholavira	A unique water harnessing system and its storm water drainage system, a large well and a bath (giant water reservoirs), Only site to be divided into 3 parts, Largest Harappan inscription used for civic purposes, A stadium.
Surkotada	Bones of horse, Oval grave, Pot burials.
Daimabad	Bronze images (Charioteer with chariot, ox, elephant and rhinoceros)

- *Mohenjodaro* – the largest site of Indus Civilization, *Rakhigarhi*—The largest Indian site of Indus Civilization.
- **Common Features of Major Cities** : 1. Systematic town-planning on the lines of 'grid system' 2. Use of burnt bricks in constructions 3. Underground drainage system (giant water reservoirs in *Dholavira*) 4. Fortified citadel (exception—*Chanhudaro*).
- *Surkotada* (Kutchh district, Gujarat) : the only Indus site where the remains of a horse have actually been found.



- **Main Crops** : Wheat and Barely; Evidence of cultivation of rice in *Lothal* and *Rangpur* (Gujarat) only. **Other Crops** : Dates, mustard, sesamum, cotton etc. Indus people were the first to produce cotton in the world.
- **Animals** : Sheep, goat, humped and humpless bull, buffalo, boar, dog, cat, pig, fowl, deer, tortoise, elephant, camel, rhinoceros, tiger etc.
- Lion was not known to Indus people. From *Amari*, a single instance of the Indian rhinoceros has been reported.
- There was extensive inland and foreign trade. Foreign trade with *Mesopotamia or Sumeria* (Modern Iraq), *Bahrain* etc. flourished.

**Imports****From**

Gold	Kolar (Karnataka), Afghanistan, Persia (Iran)
Silver	Afghanistan, Persia (Iran), South India
Copper	Khetri (Rajasthan), Baluchistan, Arabia
Tin	Afghanistan, Bihar
Lapis Lazuli and Sapphire	Badak-shan (Afghanistan)
Jade	Central Asia
Steatite	Shaher-i-Sokhta (Iran), Kirthar Hills (Pakistan)
Amethyst	Maharashtra
Agate, Chalcedonies and Carnelians	Saurashtra and West India

- **Exports** : Agricultural products, cotton goods, terracotta figurines, pottery, certain beads (from *Chanhudaro*), conch-shell (from *Lothal*), ivory products, copper etc.
- A very interesting feature of this civilization was that *Iron was not known to the people*.
- The Sumerian texts refer to trade relations with '*Meluha*' which was the name given to the Indus region.
- *Shatughai* and *Mundigao* were the Indus sites found in Afghanistan.
- The Sumerian texts also refer to two intermediate stations—*Dilmun* (Bahrain) and *Makan* (Makran coast). *Susa* and *Ur* are Mesopotamian places where Harappan seals were found.
- The Harappans were the earliest people to produce cotton (It was called '*Sindon*' by the Greeks).
- As there is no evidence of coins, barter is assumed to have been the normal method of exchange of goods.
- *Lothal* was an ancient port of Indus civilization.
- The Indus Civilization was primarily urban.
- There is no clear-cut evidence of the nature of polity, but it seems that the ruling authority of Indus Civilization was a class of merchants.
- The Harappan people didn't worship their gods in temple. No temple in fact has been unearthed. An idea of their religion is formed from the statues and figurines found.



- The most commonly found figurine is that of Mother-Goddess (*Matrivedi or Shakti*). There is evidence of prevalence of *Yoni* (female sex organ) worship.
- The chief male deity was the '*Pasupati Mahadeva*' i.e. the lord of Animals (Proto-Shiva) represented in seals as sitting in yogic posture; he is surrounded by four animals (elephant, tiger, rhino and buffalo) and two deer appear at his feet. There was the prevalence of Phallic (*lingam*) worship.
- Thus *Shiva-Shakti* worship, the oldest form of worship in India, appears to have been part of the religious belief of Harappan people (esp. humped bull).
- The remains and relics also reveal that zoolatry i.e. animal worship and tree worship (esp. peepal) were in vogue in those days.
- There is the evidence of pictographic script, found mainly on seals. The script has not been deciphered so far, but overlap of letters on some of the potsherds from *Kalibangan* show that writing was boustrophedon or from right to left and from left to right in alternate lines. It has been referred to as Proto-Dravidian.
- Steatite was mainly used in the manufacture of seals.
- Humpless bull is represented in most of the Indus seals.
- Inhumation or complete burial was the most common method of disposal of the dead.
- The origin of the '*Swastika*' symbol can be traced to the Indus Civilization.
- 'Indra is accused of causing the decline of Indus Civilisation'—*M. Wheeler*.
- The Rigveda speaks of a battle at a place named '*Hariyumpia*' which has been identified with *Harappa*.
- The majority of scholars believe that the makers of this civilization were Dravidian.
- Contemporary civilizations of Indus Civilization—*Mesopotamia, Egypt and China*.

## 2. Vedic Culture (1500 BC-600 BC)

### Original Home of the Aryan

- The location of the original home of the Aryans still remains a controversial point. Some scholars believe that the Aryans were native to the soil of India and some other scholars believe that the Aryans were migrated from outside [Central Asia (*Max Muller*)/ Europe / Arctic region (*B. G. Tilak*)].
- According to popular belief, the Aryans are supposed to have migrated from Central Asia into the Indian subcontinent in several stages or waves during 2000 BC-1500 BC.
- *Boghazkai Inscription* (Asia Minor, Turkey), which mentions 4 vedic gods *Indra, Varuna, Mitra* and *Nasatyas*, proves Central Asian Theory as their homeland.



- The group that came to India first settled in the present Frontier Province and the Punjab—then called *Sapta Sindhu* i.e. region of seven rivers. They lived here for many centuries and gradually pushed into the interior to settle in the valleys of the Ganges and the Yamuna.

### Vedic Literature (1500 BC-600 BC)

- It is presumed that the Rig Veda was composed while the Aryans were still in the Punjab.
- Vedic Literature comprises of four literary productions : 1. *The Samhitas or Vedas* 2. *The Brahmanas* 3. *The Aranyakas* 4. *The Upanishads*.
- Vedic Literature had grown up in course of time and was really handed down from generation to generation by word of mouth. Hence these are called *Shruti* (to hear).
- The most important of Vedic Literature are *Vedas*. *Vedas* are called *Apaurasheya* i.e. not created by man but God-gifted and *Nitya* i.e. existing in all eternity.
- There are four Vedas—*Rig Veda*, *Sama Veda*, *Yajur Veda* and *Atharva Veda*. The first three Vedas are jointly called *Vedatrayi* i.e. trio of Vedas.
- Of the four Vedas, the *Rig Veda* (Collection of lyrics) is the oldest text in the world, and therefore, is also known as 'the first testament of mankind'. The Rig Veda contains 1028 hymns, divided into 10 mandalas. Six mandalas (from 2nd to 7th mandalas) are called *Gotra/Vamsha Mandalas (Kula Granth)*. The 1st and 10th mandalas are said to have been added later. The 10th mandala contains the famous *Purushasukta* which explains the 4 Varnas – Brahmana, Kshatriya, Vaishya and Shudra. The hymns of Rig Veda were recited by *Hotri*.
- The *Sama Veda* (book of chants) had 1549 hymns. All hymns (excluding 75) were taken from the Rig Veda. The hymns of the Sama Veda were recited by *Udgatri*. This Veda is important for Indian music.
- The *Yajur Veda* (book of sacrificial prayers) is a ritual veda. Its hymns were recited by *Adhvaryus*. It is divided into two parts—*Krishna Yajur Veda* and *Shukla Yajur Veda*. In contrast to the first two which are in verse entirely, this one is in both verse and prose.
- The *Atharva Veda* (book of magical formulae), the fourth and the last one, contains charms and spells to ward off evils and diseases. For a very long time it was not included in the category of the Vedas.
- The *Brahmanas* explain the hymns of the Vedas. They are written in prose and ritualistic in nature. *Brahma* means 'sacrifice'. The various sacrifices and rituals have been elaborately discussed in the Brahmanas. Every Veda has several Brahmanas attached to it :  
 Rig Veda—*Aitareya* and *Kaushitiki/Sankhyan*.  
 Sam Veda—*Panchvisha (Tandya Maha Brahmana)*, *Shadvinsh*, *Chhandogya* and *Jaiminaya*.  
 Yajur Veda—*Shatapatha* (the oldest and the largest Brahmana) and *Taittiriya*.  
 Atharva Veda—*Gopatha*.



- The word *Aranya* means 'the forest'. The 'forest texts' were called *Aranyaka*, because they were written mainly for the hermits and the students living in jungles. The *Aranyaka* are the concluding portions of the *Brahmanas*.
- The *Upanishadas* are philosophical texts. They are generally called *Vedanta*, as they came towards the end of the *Veda*. There are 108 *Upanishadas*. *Vrihadaranyaka* is the oldest *Upanishada*.

### Literature of Vedic Tradition (600 BC-600 AD)

- Literature of Vedic Tradition (*Smriti* i.e. remembrance literature) comprises of 6 literary works : 1. *Vedangas/Sutras* 2. *Smritis* 3. *Dharmashastras* 4. *Mahakavyas* (Epics) 5. *Puranas* 6. *Shad-Dharshanas*.
- There are six *Vedangas* :
  - (i) **Shiksha** (Phonetics) : '*Pratishakhya*'—the oldest text on phonetics.
  - (ii) **Kalpa Sutras** (Rituals) : a. *Shrauta Sutras/Shulva Sutras*—deal with the sacrifices, b. *Grihya Sutras*—deal with family ceremonies, c. *Dharma Sutras*—deal with *Varnas*, *Ashramas* etc.
  - (iii) **Vyakarana** (Grammar) : '*Ashtadyayi*' (*Panini*)—the oldest grammar of the word.
  - (iv) **Nirukta** (Etymology) : '*Nirukta*' (*Yask*) based on '*Nighantu*' (*Kashyap*)—a collection of difficult vedic words—('Nighantu'—the oldest word-collection of the world; '*Nirukta*'—the oldest dictionary of the world).
  - (v) **Chhanda** (Metrics) : '*Chhandasutras*' (*Pingal*)—famous text.
  - (vi) **Jyotisha** (Astronomy) : '*Vedanga Jyotisha*' (*Lagadh Muni*)—the oldest *Jyotisha* text.
- There are six famous *Smritis* : (i) *Manu Smriti* (Pre-Gupta Period)—the oldest *Smriti* text; Commentators : *Vishwarupa*, *Meghatithi*, *Gobindraj*, *Kulluk Bhatt*. (ii) *Yajnavalkya Smriti* (Pre-Gupta Period)—Commentators : *Vishwarupa*, *Vijnyaneshwar*, *Apararka* (a king of *Shilahar Dynasty*) (iii) *Narad Smriti* (Gupta period), (iv) *Parashara Smriti* (Gupta period), (v) *Brihaspati Smriti* (Gupta period), (vi) *Katyayana Smriti* (Gupta period).
- There are mainly two *Mahakavyas* (Epics) :
  - (i) **The Ramayana** (*Valmiki*) : It is known as '*Adi Kavya*' (the oldest epic of the world). At present, it consists of 24,000 *shlokas* i.e. verses (Originally 6,000, Later – 12,000, Finally – 24,000) in 7 *Kandas* i.e. sections. 1st and 7th *Kandas* were the latest additions to the *Ramayana*.
  - (ii) **The Mahabharata** (*Ved Vyasa*) : The longest epic of the world. At present, it consists of 1,00,000 *shlokas* i.e. verses (Originally–8,800–*Jay Samhita*, Later–24,000–*Chaturvinshati Sahastri Samhita/Bharata*, Finally–1,00,000–*Shatasahastri Samhita/Maha Bharata*) in 18 *Parvans* i.e. chapters, plus the *Harivamsa* supplement. *Bhagavad Gita* is extracted from *Bishma Parvan* of *Mahabharata*. *Shanti Parvan* is the largest *parvan* (chapter) of the *Mahabharata*.



- The *Purana* means 'the old'. There are 18 famous 'Puranas'. The *Matsya Purana* is the oldest Puranic text. The other important Puranas are the *Bhagavata*, *The Vishnu*, *The Vayu* and *The Brahmnda*. They describe genealogies of various royal dynasties.
- The *Upavedas* (the auxiliary vedas) were traditionally associated with vedas :

Upavedas	Associated with
(i) <i>Ayurveda</i> i.e. Medicine	Rig Veda
(ii) <i>Gandharvaveda</i> i.e. Music	Sama Veda
(iii) <i>Dhanurveda</i> i.e. Archery	Yajur Veda
(iv) <i>Shilpveda/Arthaveda</i> i.e. the science of Atharva Veda craft/wealth (Vishwakarma)	

- There are 6 schools of Indian philosophy known as *Shad-Darshanas*.

Darshana	Founder	Basic Text
(i) Sankhya Darshana	Kapila	Sankhya Sutra
(ii) Yoga Darshana	Patanjali	Yoga Sutra
(iii) Nyaya Darshana	Akshapada Gautama	Nayaya Sutra
(iv) Vaishesika Darshana	Uluka Kanada	Vaishesika Sutra
(v) Mimansa/Purva-Mimansa	Jaimini	Purva Mimansa Sutra
(vi) Vedant/Uttara-Mimansa	Badarayana	Brahma Sutra/Vedant Sutra

### Rig Vedic/Early Vedic Period (1500 BC–1000 BC)

#### Geographical Area

- Rig Veda is the only source of knowledge for this period.
- From the names of rivers, mountains (*Himvant* i.e. Himalaya, *Munjavant* i.e. Hindukush) and ocean in Rig Veda we have a clear idea of the geographical area in which Rigvedic people lived.
- Rig Veda mentions 40 rivers. The *Nadisukta* hymn of the Rig Veda mentions 21 rivers which include the Ganges in the east and the Kubha (Kabul) in the west.
- Rigvedic people, who called themselves Aryans, were confined in the area which came to be known as *Sapta Sindhu* i.e. land of the seven rivers. *Sapta Sindhu* comprises *Sindhu* and their five tributaries – *Vitasta*, *Asikani*, *Vipas*, *Parushni* & *Sutuadri* and *Saraswati*.
- According to the Rig Veda, the most mentioned river—Sindhu, the most pious river—Saraswati, mention of the Ganges—1 time, mention of Yamuna—3 times.
- **The Dasrajan War (The Battle of Ten Kings)**  
According to Rig Veda, the famous Dasrajan war was the internecine war of the Aryans. The Dasrajan war gives names of ten kings who



participated in a war against *Sudas* who was *Bharata* king of *Tritsus* family. The ten kings were of the states of Purus, Yadus, Turvasas, Anus and Druhyus along with five others viz. Alinas, Pakhtas, Bhalanas, Sibis and Vishanins. The battle was fought on the bank of Parushni (Ravi) in which *Sudas* emerged victorious.

Rigvedic Name	Modern Name	Region
Sindhu	Indus	Punjab
Vitasta	Jhelum	Punjab
Asikani	Chenab	Punjab
Vipas	Beas	Punjab
Parushni	Ravi	Punjab
Sutudri	Sutlej	Punjab
Saraswati	Sarsuti	Rajasthan
Drishadvati	Ghaggar	Rajasthan
Kubha	Kabul	Afghanistan
Suvastu	Swati	Afghanistan
Krumu	Kurram	Afghanistan
Gomati	Gomal	Afghanistan

### Polity

- |   | Unit                  | Head          |
|---|-----------------------|---------------|
| ➤ <i>The Kula (the family)</i> was the basis of both social and political organisations. Above the Kula were <i>the Grama, the Vis, the Jana</i> and <i>the Rashtra</i> . A group of Kula ( <i>families</i> ) formed a Grama (the village) and so on. | Kula (the family)     | Kulapa        |
|   | Grama (the village)   | Gramani       |
|   | Vis (the clan)        | Vispati       |
|   | Jana (the people)     | Gopa / Gopati |
|   | Rashtra (the country) | Rajan         |
- Regarding the form of government it was of patriarchal nature. Monarchy was normal, but non-monarchical polities were also there.
  - The Rashtra was ruled by a King or Rajan and the royal descent was by hereditary based on the law of primogeniture. Probably elective monarchy was also known.
  - Very little is known about ministers of the king. *The Purohita* or domestic priest was the first ranking official. He was the king's preceptor, friend, philosopher and guide. Other important royal officials were *Senani* (army chief) and *Gramani* (head of village).
  - The army consisted of foot-soldiers and charioteers. Wood, stone, bone and metals were used in weapons. Arrows were tipped with points of metal or poisoned horn. References are made to the moving fort (*Purcharishnu*) and a machine for assaulting strongholds.
  - The king had religious duties also. He was the upholder of the established order and moral rules.
  - Rig Veda speaks of assemblies such as the *Sabha, Samiti, Vidath, Gana*. Sabha was committee of few privileged and important.



individuals. Two popular assemblies, Sabha and Samiti, acted as checks on the arbitrary rule of kings. Later Vedas record that the Sabha functioned as a court of justice.

- Theft, burglary, stealing of cattle and cheating were some of the then prevent crimes.

### Society

- The Rigvedic society comprised four varnas, namely *Brahmana*, *Kshatriya*, *Vaisya* and *Shudra*. This classification of society was based on the professions or occupations of the individuals.
- Teachers and priests were called *Brahmanas*; rulers and administrators were called *Kshatriyas*; farmers, merchants and bankers were called *Vaishyas*; and artisans and labourers were reckoned as *Shudras*.
- These vocations were followed by persons according to their ability and liking, and the occupations had not become hereditary as they became later on.
- Members of the same family took to different professions and belonged to different varnas as well illustrated by a hymn of the Rig Veda. In this hymn a person says : '*I am a singer; my father is a physician, my mother is a grinder of corn.*'
- The unit of society was family, primarily monogamous and patriarchal.
- Child marriage was not in vogue.
- A widow could marry the younger brother of her deceased husband (*Niyoga*).
- The father's property was inherited by son.
- Right to property existed in respect of moveable things like cattle, horse, gold and ornaments and also in respect of immovable property like land and house.
- The home of the teacher was the school where he taught the particular sacred texts.
- Milk and its products—curd, butter and ghee—formed an important part of the diet. There is also the mention of grain cooked with milk (*Kshirapakamodanam*).
- The meat of fish, birds and animals was eaten.
- The cow was already deemed *Aghanya* i.e. not to be killed.
- Rig Veda prescribes a penalty of death or expulsion from the kingdom to those who kill or injure cows.
- Alcoholic drinks, *Sura* and *Soma* were also consumed.
- Aryans were primarily agricultural and pastoral people who reckoned their wealth in terms of cows.
- Amusements included music, dancing, chariot-racing and dicing. One stanza in the Rig Veda known as the gambler's lament says : 'My wife rejects me and her mother hates me'.



### Religion

- During the Rigvedic time the gods worshipped were generally the personified powers of Nature. It was believed that divine powers were capable of conferring both boons and punishments on man. Fire was sacred as it was regarded to be the intermediary between man and God.
- There were nearly 33 gods. Later day tradition classified them into 3 categories of terrestrial (*prithvisthana*), aerial or intermediate (*antarikshasthana*) and celestial (*dyusthana*) god.
  - (i) **Terrestrial (Prithvisthaniya)**: *Prithivi, Agni, Soma, Brihaspati* and rivers.
  - (ii) **Aerial/Intermediate (Antarikshasthaniya)**: *Indra, Rudra, Vayu-Vata, Parjanya*.
  - (iii) **Celestial (Dyusthaniya)**: *Daus, Surya* (In 5 forms : *Surya, Savitri, Mitra, Pushan, Vishnu*), *Varuna, Aditi, Usha* and *Asvin*.
- *Indra, Agni* and *Varuna* were the most popular deities of Rigvedic Aryans.
 

*Indra* or *Purandara* (destroyer of fort) : The most important god (250 Rigvedic hymns are devoted to him); who played the role of warlord and was considered to be the rain god.

*Agni*: The second most important god (200 Rigvedic hymns are devoted to him); fire god was considered to be the intermediary between the gods and the people.

*Varuna*: Personified water; was supposed to uphold '*Rita*' or the natural order ('*Ritasyagopa*').
- *Surya* (Sun) was worshiped in 5 forms : *Surya, Savitri, Mitra, Pushan* and *Vishnu*.
 

*Surya* (Sun) : God who used to drive daily across the sky in his chariot driven by seven horses.

*Savitri* (the god of light) : The famous *Gayatri Mantra* is addressed to her.

*Mitra* : A solar god.

*Pushan* : The god of marriage; main function—guarding of roads, herdsmen and straying cattle.

*Vishnu* : A god which covered earth in three steps (*Upakrama*).
- *Soma* : Originally a plant producing a potent drink during courses of *Agnishtoma* sacrifice, could be hemp/*bhang*, called king of plants; identified later with the moon. The 9th mandala of Rig Veda, which contains 114 hymns, is attributed to the *Soma*. That's why it is called 'the *Soma Mandala*'.
- Other Gods/Goddesses : *Rudra* (the god of animals), *Dyaus* (the oldest god and the father of the world), *Yama* (the god of death), *Ashwin/Nastya* (the god of health, youth and immortality); *Aditi* (the great mother of gods), *Sindhu* (river goddess).
- Sometimes gods were visualised as animals but there was no animal worship.



- The nature of Rigvedic religion was Henotheism i.e. a belief in many gods but each god standing out in turns as the highest.
- Their religion primarily consisted of the worship of gods with a simple ceremonial known as *Yajna* or sacrifice. Sacrifices consisted of offerings of milk, ghee, grain, flesh and soma.

### Economy

- The Aryans crossed the nomadic stage. Yet, great importance was attached to herds of cattle. Various animals were domesticated.
- The vedic people were probably not familiar with cat and camel. Tiger was not known, but the wild animals like lion, elephant and boar were known to them.
- In all probability, very little of trade was there.
- Money and markets were known but they were not extensively used. Cows and gold ornaments of fixed value were the media of exchange. Coins were not known.
- Complexity in producing goods made its appearance. Men of various professions like carpenters, smiths, tanners, weavers, potters and grinders of corn were there.
- The art of healing wounds and curing diseases were in existence. There were experts in surgery. Along with herbs and drugs charms and spells were regard as equally potential in healing diseases.
- OCP (Ochre Coloured Pottery) Culture : 1500 BC-1000 BC.

### Later Vedic Period : 1000 BC - 600 BC

#### Geographical Area

- During the later Vedic Period, the Aryan settlements covered virtually the whole of Northern India (*Aryavarta*).
- The centre of culture now shifted from Saraswati to Ganges (*Madhya desa*).
- There was mention of more rivers such as *Narmada*, *Sadanira* (modern Gandak), *Chambal* etc.
- The expansion of people towards the east is indicated in a legend of *Satapatha Brahmana*—how *Videha Madhava* migrated from the Saraswati region, crossed Sadanira and came to the land of Videha (modern Tirhut).
- Emergence of *Janapadas*—*Kuru* (Combination of *Purus* and *Bharatas*), *Panchala* (Combination of *Turvashas* and *Krivis*), *Kashi* etc. in Doab region.
- Later Vedic literatures mention Vindhya mountain (Southern mountain).
- Reference to the territorial divisions the later Vedas gives three broad divisions of India, viz. *Aryavarta* (Northern India), *Madhya desa* (Central India) and *Dakhinapath* (Southern India).



### Polity

- Large kingdoms and stately cities made their appearance in the later Vedic Period.
- In *Taittiriya Brahmana* we notice the theory of the divine origin of kingship.
- The governmental machinery became more elaborate than before, as a sequel to the growth of the power of the king. New civil functionaries, besides the only civil functionary of the Rigvedic period the *purohita* came into existence. These were: the *Bhagadudha* (Collector of taxes), the *Suta/Sarathi* (the Royal herald or Charioteer), the *Khasttri* (Chamberlain), the *Akshavapa* (Courier).
- The military officials of the Rigvedic times, the *Senani* (the general) and the *Gramani* (the head of the vilalge) continued to function.
- The period also saw the beginning of a regular system of provincial government. Thus, we find *Sthapati* being entrusted with the duty of administering outlying areas ocupied by the aboriginals and *Satapati* being put over a group of one hundred villages.
- *Adhikrita* was the village official. *Ugras*, mentioned in the Upanishada, was probably a police official.
- The popular control over the affairs of the kingdom was exercised through *Sabha* and *Samiti*, as in the Rigvedic period. *Vidatha* had completely disappeared by now.
- Even during the later vedic times, kings did not possess a standing army.
- Judiciary also grew. The king played a great role in administering criminal law. The killing of an embryo, homicide, the murder of a Brahmana, in particular, stealing of gold and drinking sura were regarded as serious crimes. Treason was a capital offence.

#### 12 Ratninas (Satapatha Brahamana)

1.	Purohita	the Priest
2.	Mahishi	the Queen
3.	Yuvaraja	Crown prince
4.	Suta/Sarathi	the Royal herald/ the Charioteer
5.	Senani	the General
6.	Gramani	Head of the village
7.	Kshata	Gateman/Chamberlain
8.	Sangrahitri	Treasurer
9.	Bhagadudha	Collector of taxes
10.	Akshavapa	Courier
11.	Palagala	Friend of King
12.	Govikarta	Head of forest department

### Society

- As the time passed by *Yajnas* became elaborate and complicated ceremonial leading to the emergence of learned men known as *Brahmanas*.
- And as the Aryans expanded to the east and south, group of people known as *Kshatriyas* emerged to conquer territories and administer them. The remaining Aryans formed a separate class known as *Vaishyas*,



a word derived from *Vis* meaning 'people'. The non-Aryan formed the fourth class known as *Shudras*.

- Nevertheless, these divisions of society were not rigid.
- The institution of *Gotra* i.e. the clan appeared in later Vedic Period.
- The higher castes could marry with the lower ones, but marriage with shudras was not permitted. The idea of pollution appeared in society.
- The earliest reference to the 4 *Ashramas* (the stages of life)—*Brahmacharya*, *Grihastha*, *Vanprastha* and *Sanyasa*—is found in the *Jabala Upanishad*. The Ashrama system was formed to attain 4 *Purusharthas* (*Dharma*, *Artha*, *Kama* and *Moksha*).
- The status of women declined. According to *Aitareya Brahmana* a daughter is the source of misery but a son is the protector of family.
- According to *Maitrayani Samhita* there are three evils—liquor, woman and dice.
- Though monogamy (a man having one wife) was the ideal but polygamy (a man having more than one wife) was frequent.
- Women were prohibited to attend the political assemblies.
- *Yajnavalkya-Gargi dialogue (Vrihadarnyaka Upanishad)* indicates that some women had got higher education.

### Types of Hindu Marriage (*Vivaha*)

- Brahma Vivaha* Giving the girl to a man with dowry.
- Daiva Vivaha* Giving the girl to the priest himself in lieu of his fees.
- Arsha Vivaha* Giving the girl to a man after accepting a bride-price.
- Prajapatya Vivaha* Giving the girl to a man without demanding a bride-price.
- Gandharva Vivaha* Love marriage.
- Asura Vivaha* Marriage with a purchased girl.
- Rakshasa Vivaha* Marriage with the daughter of a defeated king or with a kidnapped girl.
- Paishacha Vivaha* Marriage to a girl after seducing or raping her.

- *Anuloma Vivaha*: marriage between a bridegroom from an upper caste and a bride from a lower caste; *Pratiloma Vivaha*—the reverse of *Anuloma Vivaha*.

### ➤ 16 Samskaras

1. Garbhadhana 2. Pumsavana 3. Simantonnayan 4. Jatakarma
5. Namakaran 6. Nishkramana 7. Annaprashana 8. Chudakarma
9. Karnachhedana 10. Vidyarmbha 11. Upanayana 12. Vedarambha
13. Samavaratana 14. Vivaha 15. Vanprastha 16. Antyesti.

### Religion

- The earlier divinities *Indra* and *Agni* were relegated into the background while *Prajapati* (creator of the Universe, later known as *Brahma*), *Vishnu* (Patron god of Aryans) and *Rudra* (God of animals, later identified with *Shiva/Mahesha*) rose in prominence. Now *Prajapati* became supreme God.



- *Pushana*, who protected cattle in the early Vedic Period now became the god of *Shudras*.
- *Brihadaranyaka Upanishada* was first the work to give the doctrine of transmigration (*Punarjanma/Samsara-chakra*) and deeds (*Karma*).
- The early simple ceremonial of Rigvedic Period gave place to elaborate sacrifices requiring the services of as many as 17 priests. In the later Vedas and Brahamanas sacrifices (*Yajnas*) came into prominence.
- There were two varieties of sacrifices—
  - (i) *Laghuyajnas* (simple sacrifices) : Performed by householder e.g. *Pancha Mahayajna*, *Agnihotra*, *Darsha Yajna* (on *Amavasya* i.e. on the last day of the dark fortnight), *Purnamasa Yajna* (on *Purnima* i.e. on the day of full moon) etc.
  - (ii) *Mahayajnas* (Grand sacrifices) : Sacrifices that could only be undertaken by an aristocratic and wealthy man and the king.
    - (a) *Rajasuya Yajna* : Royal consecration, which in its full form comprised a series of sacrifices lasting over a year. In later days it was replaced by simplified *Abhisheka* i.e. anointment.
    - (b) *Vajapeya Yajna* : Drink of strength, which lasted for a period of seventeen days upto full one year.
    - (c) *Asvamedha Yajna* : Horse sacrifice, which lasted for three days.
    - (d) *Agnishtoma Yajna* : Sacrifice of animals dedicated to Agni, which lasted one day, although Yajnika (performer of Yajna) and his wife spent ascetic life for a year before Yajna. On the occasion of the this Yajna, *soma rasa* was consumed.
- Towards the end of the Vedic Period, there was the emergence of a strong reaction against cults, rituals and priestly domination; Reflection of this mood is found in the *Upanishadas*.

### Economy

- Agriculture began to replace rearing of cattle. The plough was at times drawn by 24 oxen. Manure was known.
- Rice, barley, beans, sesame and wheat were cultivated.
- Production of goods advanced as indicated by new occupations like fisherman, washerman, dyers, door-keepers and footmen.
- Indicating specialisation distinction was drawn between the chariot-maker and the carpenter and the tanner and the hide-dresser.
- Considerable advance was made in the knowledge of metals. Mention of tin, silver and iron was made apart from gold and *ayas* (either copper or iron) in the Rig Veda.
- Evidence was there regarding organisation of merchants into guilds because of reference to corporations (*Ganas*) and aldermen (*Sreshhtins*).
- PGW (*Painted Grey Ware*) Culture : 1100 BC – 600 BC.



### 3.1. Mahajanapada Period (600 BC-325 BC)

#### 16 Mahajanapadas (Modern Area) Capital

1. **Anga** (districts of Munger and Bhagalpur in Bihar) Champa/Champanagari
2. **Magadha** (districts of Patna, Gaya and Nalanda in Bihar) Girivraj, Rajgriha/Rajgir (Bimbisara), Patliputra (Udayin), Vaishali (Shishunaga), Patliputra (Kalashok)
3. **Vajji** (districts of Muzaffarpur & Vaishali in Bihar) Videha, Mithila, Vaishali
4. **Malla** (districts of Deoria, Basti, Gorakhpur and Siddharthnagar in U.P.) Kuishinara and Pawa
5. **Kashi** (district of Varanasi in U.P.) Varanasi
6. **Kosala** (districts of Faizabad, Gonda, Bahraich in U.P.) North Kosal-Sravasti/Sahet-Mahet South Kosal-Saket/Ayodhya
7. **Vatsa** (districts of Allahabad, Mirzapur etc. in U.P.) Kausambi
8. **Chedi** (Bundelkhand area) Shaktimati/Sotthivati
9. **Kuru** (Haryana and Delhi area) Indraprastha (modern Delhi)
10. **Panchala** (Ruhelkhand, Western U.P.) North Panchal-Ahichhatra South Panchal-Kampilya
11. **Shurasena** (Brajmandal) Mathura
12. **Matsya** (Alwar, Bharatpur and Jaipur in Rajasthan) Viratnagar
13. **Avanti** (Malwa) North Avanti-Ujjayini South Avanti-Mahishmati
14. **Ashmaka** (between the rivers Narmada and Godavari) Potana/Patali
15. **Gandhara** (western part of Pakistan and Afghanistan) Taxila (near Rawalpindi, Pakistan) and Pushkalavati
16. **Kamboja** (Hazara district of Pakistan) Rajapur/Hataka

➤ Buddhist literature (*Anguttara Nikaya*, *Mahavastu*) and Jain literature (*Bhagavati Sutta*) present a list of 16 Mahajanapadas with minor variation of names.

➤ There were two types of states—monarchical and non-monarchical/republican. Monarchical states—Anga, Magadha, Kashi, Kosala, Vatsa, Chedi, Shursena, Matsya, Avanti, Gandhara.

Republican States—Vajji, Malla, Kuru, Panchal, Kamboja, Shakya (Kapilvastu), Koliyas (Ramgrama), Moriya (Piplivana).



### Rise of Magadha

- The political history of India from 6th century BC onwards is the history of struggle between four states—Magadha, Kosala, Vatsa and Avanti—for supremacy.
- Ultimately the kingdom of Magadha emerged to be the most powerful one and succeeded in founding an empire.
- **Causes of Magadha's success**
  - (i) Magadha enjoyed an advantageous geographical position in the age of iron, because the richest iron deposits were situated not far away from Rajgir, the earliest capital of Magadha and could be used for making weapons.
  - (ii) Magadha lay at the centre of the middle Gangetic plain. The alluvium, once cleared of the jungles, proved immense fertile and food surplus was thus available.
  - (iii) Magadha enjoyed a special advantage in military organisation. Although the Indian states were well acquainted with the use of horses and chariots, it was Magadha which first used elephants on a large scale in its war against its neighbours.

### Haryanaka Dynasty : 544 BC-412 BC

#### Bimbisara (Shronika) : 544 BC-492 BC

- He was the founder of Haryanka dynasty.
- Magadha came into prominence under the leadership of *Bimbisara*.
- He was a contemporary of *Gautama Buddha*.
- He married the princesses of Kosala (*Kosaladevi*/ *Mahakosala*-sister of Kosal King Prasenjit), Lichchhavi (*Chellana*-sister of Lichchhavi Head Chetaka) and Madra (*Khema*-daughter of Madra king), which helped him in his expansionist policy.
- He gained a part of *Kashi* as the dowry in his marriage with the sister of king Prasenjit of Kosala.
- He conquered *Anga*.
- He sent a royal physician, *Jivaka* to Ujjain, when Avanti King *Pradyota* was attacked by jaundice.
- Known as *Seniya*. He was the first Indian king who had a regular and standing army.
- He built the city of New Rajagriha.

#### Ajatashatru (Kunika) : 492 BC - 460 BC

- Bimbisara was succeeded by his son Ajatashatru. Ajatashatru killed his father and seized the throne.
- Ajatashatru followed a more aggressive policy. He gained complete control over *Kashi* and broke the earlier amicable relations by attacking his maternal uncle Prasenjit, the king of Kosala.
- The *Vajji* confederation was Ajatashatru's next target of attack. This war was a lengthy one and tradition tells us that after a long period of



16 years, he was able to defeat the Vajji only through deceit, by sowing the seeds of discord amongst the people of Vajji.

- The three things who played important role to defeat the Vajji— (i) *Sunidha* and *Vatsakar*—Ajatashatru's diplomatic ministers, who sowed the seeds of discord amongst Vajjis, (ii) *Rathamusala*—a kind of chariot to which a mace was attached (iii) *Mahashilakantaka*—a war engine which catapulted big stones.
- In this way *Kashi* and *Vaishali* (the capital of Vajji) were added to Magadha, making it the most powerful territorial power in the Ganges Valley.
- He built the fort of *Rajagriha* and a watch-fort (*Jaladurga*) at a village called *Patali*, on the banks of the Ganges.

#### Udayin : 460 BC-440 BC

- Ajatashatru was succeeded by his son Udayin.
- His reign is important because he laid the foundations of the city of *Patliputra* at the confluence of the Son and the Ganges and shifted the capital from Rajagriha to Patliputra.
- Udayin was succeeded by *Anuruddha*, *Munda* and *Naga-Dasak* respectively who all were weak and parricides.

#### Shisunaga Dynasty : 412 BC-344 BC

- *Nag-Dasak* was unworthy to rule. So the people got disgusted and elected Shisunaga as the King, the minister of the last king.
- The most important achievement of *Shisunaga* was the destruction of the Pradyota dynasty of *Avanti*. This brought to an end the hundred year old rivalry between Magadha and Avanti. From then on Avanti become a part of the Magadha rule.
- Shisunaga was succeeded by *Kalashoka* (*Kakavarna*). His reign is important because he convened the *Second Buddhists Council* in *Vaishali* (383 BC).

#### Nanda Dynasty : 344 BC-323 BC

- The Shisunaga dynasty was overthrown by *Mahapadma* who established a new line of kings known as the Nandas.
- Mahapadma is known as *Sarvakshatrantak* i.e. Uprooter of all the Kshatriyas (Puras) and *Ugrasena* i.e. Owner of huge army (Pali texts).
- The Puranas call Mahapadma *Ekkrat* i.e. the sole monarch. He seems to have overthrown all the dynasties which ruled at the time of Shisungas. He is often described as 'the first empire builder of Indian history'.
- Mahapadma was succeeded by his eight sons. *Dhanananda* was the last one.
- The last king Dhanananda is possibly identical with the *Agrammes* or *Xandrames* of the Greek texts.
- It was during the rule of Dhanananda that the invasion of Alexander took place in north-west India in 326 BC.



- According to Greek writer Curtius, Dhanananda commanded a huge army 20,000 cavalry, 200,000 infantry, 2,000 chariots and 3,000 elephants. It was the might of Dhanananda that terrorised Alexander and stopped his march to the Gangetic Valley.
- The Nanda dynasty came to an end about 322-21 BC and was supplanted by another dynasty known as Mauryas, with *Chandragupta Maurya* as the founder.

### Foreign Invasions

#### I. Iranian/Persian Invasion—Darius's Invasion (518 BC)

- The Achaemenian rulers of Iran (Persia), who expanded their empire at the same time as the Magadhan princes, took advantage of the political disunity on the North-West Frontier of India.
- The Achaemenian ruler *Darius I (Darayabahu)* penetrated into North-West India in 518 BC and annexed Punjab, West of the Indus and Sindh. This area constituted the 20th province (*Kshatrapa*) of Iran, the total number of provinces in the Iranian empire being 28. This province was the most fertile area of the Iranian empire. From this province the empire received 360 talent gold as revenue.
- The Indo-Iranian contact lasted for about 200 years.

#### Effects of Iranian Invasion

1. It gave an impetus to Indo-Iranian trade and commerce.
2. Through the Iranian, the Greeks came to know about the great wealth of India and this eventually led to Alexander's invasion of India.
3. The Iranian scribes brought into India a form of writing which came to be known as the *Kharosthi* script. It was written from right to left like the Arabic.
4. Iranian influence on the Mauryan Sculpture is clearly perceptible, especially in the bell shaped capitals. Iranian influence may also be traced in the preamble of Ashoka's edicts as well as in certain words used in them.

#### II. Macedonian Invasion—Alexander's Invasion (326 BC)

- In the 4th century BC, the Greeks and the Iranian fought for the supremacy of the world. Under the leadership of Alexander of Macedonia the Greek finally destroyed the Iranian empire.
- Alexander succeeded his father Philip to the throne of Macedonia. He was then only 20 years of Age.
- From his very childhood he used to dream of world-conquest. He quickly conquered many areas.
- As a preliminary step to conquer India, the Kabul valley and the hilly area of North-West frontier were conquered, and he reached Ohind near Attock in 326 BC.
- The rulers of Taxila and Abhisara submitted but *Porus (Puru)* refused to do so.



- Alexander then crossed the Jhelum by a trick. Porus was defeated in the battle that followed, but Alexander treated him very generously for his bravery. (*Battle of Vitasta* i.e. modern *Jhelum*, Greek-*Hydaspes* - 326 BC).
- This was how the Indians were defeated because of their disunity.
- After a brilliant victory at Sakala, the Greek forces reached the *Beas*. Alexander had to return from this place as his soldiers refused to go any further. The battle of Jhelum and Sakla had opened their eyes and they were afraid of the great Magadhan empire across the Beas.
- After making administrative arrangements for the conquered territory, Alexander marched back in Sep. 325 BC.
- He reached Babylon in 323 BC where he died at the age of 33.

### Effects of Alexander's Invasion

1. By opening up both the land and sea routes between India and Europe, it brought both of them closer to each other.
2. Indirectly this invasion made possible the establishment of Indo-Bactrian and Indo-Parthian states, which at a later stage considerably influenced Indian architecture (Gandhara school of sculpture), astronomy, coinage etc.
3. The invasion opened the eyes of Indian politicians to the necessity of creating a unified empire.
4. The date of the Invasion of Alexander is the 'first reliable date in early Indian history' and considerably helps us in solving chronological difficulties.

### 3.2. Religious Movements (600 BC - 400 BC)

Various religious movements viz. Buddhism, Jainism etc. were born and grew up in the Post-Vedic Period known as the Period of Second Urbanisation or the Age of Buddha (6th Century BC to 4th Century BC).

#### Causes of Religious Movements

1. The vedic philosophy had lost its original purity.
2. The vedic religion had become very complex and had degenerated into superstitions, dogmas and rituals.
3. Supremacy of the Brahmans created unrest in the society and Kshatriyas reacted against the Brahmanical domination.
4. Introduction of a new agricultural economy in Eastern India.
5. The desire of Vaishyas to improve their social position with the increase in their economic position due to the growth of trade.

#### Buddhism

##### Buddha's Life

- *Gautama Buddha*, founder of Buddhism, was born in 563 BC (widely accepted), on the vaisakha purnima day at *Lumbinivana* in *Kapilvastu* (now situated in the foothills of Nepal) in the *Sakya Kshatriya* clan.



- His father *Suddhodhana* was the republican king of Kapilvastu and mother *Mahamaya* was a princess of Kosala dynasty.
- After his mother's early death, he was brought up by his step mother and aunt *Mahaprajapati Gautami*.
- His father married him at an early age to *Yasodhara* (Princess of Kolli dynasty) from whom he had a son *Rahul*.
- Four sights—an old man, a diseased person, a dead body and an ascetic—proved to be a turning point in his carrier.
- At the age of 29, he renounced home, this was his *Mahabhinishkramana* (great going forth) and became a wandering ascetic.
- His first teacher was *Alara Kalama* (Sankhya philosopher) from whom he learnt the technique of meditation.
- His next teacher was *Udraka Ramputra*.
- At the age of 35, under a pipal tree at *Uruvella (Bodh Gaya)* on the bank of river *Niranjana* (modern name Falgu) he attained *Nirvana* (enlightenment) after 49 days of continuous meditation; now he was a fully enlightened (*Buddha or Tathagat*).
- Buddha delivered his first sermon at *Sarnath* (Dear park) to his five deciples, this is known as *Dharmachakra Pravartana* (Turning of the wheel of law).
- He died at the age of 80 in 483 BC at *Kushinagar* (identical with the village Kasia in Siddharthanagar Janapada of Deoria district of U.P.). This is known as *Mahaparinirvana* (Final Blowing out).

#### Great Events of Buddha's Life

Janma (Birth)	<b>Symbols</b>
Mahabhinishkramana (Renunciation)	Lotus and Bull
Nirvana/Sambodhi (Enlightenment)	Horse
Dharmachakra pravartana (First Sermon)	Bodhi tree
Mahaparinirvana (Death)	Wheel
	Stupa
➤ <i>Kanthaka</i> —Buddha's horse, <i>Channa</i> —Buddha's charioteer, <i>Devadatta</i> —Buddha's cousin, <i>Sujata</i> —the farmer's daughter who gave him rice milk at Bodh Gaya and Other names of Buddha—Gautama (Clan name), Siddharta (Childhood name), Shakyamuni.	

#### Doctrine of Buddhism

##### *Chatwari Arya Satyani* (Four Noble Truths)

It is the essence of Buddhism.

1. Life is full of sorrow (*Dukha*): *Sabbam Dukkam*.
2. There are causes of sorrow (*Dukha Samudaya*): *Dwadash Nidan/Pratitya Samutpada*.
3. This sorrow can be stopped (*Dukha Nirodha*): *Nirvana*.
4. There is a path leading to the cessation of sorrow (*Dukha Nirodha Gamini Pratipada*): *Ashtangika Marga*.



**Note :** (i) Pratitya samutapada is also known as *Hetuvada* (theory of cause-effect) and *Kshanabhanga Vada* (theory of momentariness/impermanence).

(ii) Desire is root cause of sorrow.

(iii) The ultimate aim of life is to attain *nirvana*, the eternal state of peace and bliss, which means liberation from the cycle of birth and death.

(iv) *Ashtangika Marga* (Eight fold path) are : right observation, right determination, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right exercise, right memory and right meditation.

(v) *Madhya Marga/ Madhyama Pratipada* (the middle path)—Man should avoid both extremes, i.e. a life of comforts and luxury, and a life of severe asceticism.

### **Triratna i.e. Three Jewels of Buddhism**

1. *Buddha* (the enlightened) 2. *Dharma* (doctrine) 3. *Sangha* (commune)

<b>Buddhist C.</b>	<b>Year</b>	<b>Venue</b>	<b>Chairman</b>	<b>Patron</b>	<b>Result</b>
1st Buddhist Council	483 BC	Saptaparni Cave, Rajgriha	Mahakassapa	Ajatashatru (Harayanka Dynasty)	Compilation of Sutta-Pitaka and Vinaya Pitaka by Ananda and Upali respectively
2nd Buddhist Council	383 BC	Chullavanga Vaishali	Sabbakami	Kalashoka (Shisunaga Dynasty)	(i) The monks of Vaishali wanted some change in rites. (ii) Schism into Sthaviravadins and Mahasanghikas.
3rd Buddhist Council	250 BC	Ashokarama Vihar, Patliputra	Mogaliputta Tissa	Ashoka (Maurya Dynasty)	(i) Compilation of Abhidhamma Pitaka (ii) Decision to send missionaries to various parts of the world
4th Buddhist Council	98 AD	Kundala Vana, Kashmir	Chairman- Vasumitra Vice chairman- Ashvaghosa	Kanishka (Kushana Dynasty)	(i) Compilation of Mahavibhasha shastra (Sanskrit comment on Tripitaka) (ii) the division of Buddhists into Hinayanists and Mahayanists



## Buddhist Literature

### I. Pali Texts

**Tripitaka** : Pitaka literally means 'basket' and it was called so, because the original texts were written on palm-leaves and kept in baskets. **Sutta Pitaka**—Buddha's sayings, **Vinay Pitaka**—monastic code, **Abhidhamma Pitaka**—religious discourses of Buddha (Abhidhamma Pitaka comprises of Dighgha Nikaya, Majhim Nikaya, Sanyukta Nikaya, Anguttar Nikaya and Khuddak/Kshudraka Nikaya).

**Milindapanho** (i.e. Questions of Milinda)—a dialogue between **Milinda** (identical with Indo-Greek ruler **Menander**) and Buddhist saint **Nagasena**.

**Dipavamsha** and **Mahavamsha**—The great chronicles of Sri Lanka.

### II. Sanskrit Texts

Buddha Charita, Saundarananda, Sutralankar, Sariputra Prakaran and Vajra Suchi—**Ashwagosh**; Mahavibhasha Shastra—**Vasumitra**; Visudhamagga, Atthakathayen and Sumangalvasini—**Buddhagosh**; Madhyamika Karika and Prajnaparimita Karika—**Nagarjuna** etc.

### Sects of Buddhism

**Hinayana** (i.e. the Lesser Vehicle) : (i) Its followers believed in the original teaching of Buddha (ii) They sought individual salvation through self-discipline and meditation. (iii) They did not believe in idol-worship. (iv) They favoured **Pali** language. (v) It is known as 'Southern Buddhist Religion', because it prevailed in the South of India, e.g. Sri Lanka, Burma (Myanmar), Syam (Thailand), Java etc. (vi) There were two subsects of Hinayana—**Vaibhasika** and **Sautantrika**.

**Mahayana** (i.e. the Greater Vehicle) : (i) Its followers believed in the heavenliness of Buddha (ii) They sought the salvation of all through the grace and help of Buddha and Bodhisatva (iii) They believed in idol-worship (iv) They favored **Sanskrit** language (v) It is known as 'Northern Buddhist Religion', because it prevailed in the North of India, e.g. China, Korea, Japan, etc. (vi) There were two subsects of Mahayana—**Madhyamika/Shunyavada** (founder—Nagarjuna) and **Yogachar/Vijnanavada** (founder—Maitreyanath and his disciple Asanga).

**Vajrayana** : (i) Its followers believed that salvation could be best attained by acquiring the magical power, which they called **Vajra**. (ii) The chief divinities of this new sect were **the Taras**. (iii) It became popular in Eastern India, particularly Bengal and Bihar.

### Bodhisattvas

- (i) **Vajrapani** : like Indra, he holds a thunderbolt, foe of sin and evil.
- (ii) **Avlokitesvara** (the lord who looks down) also called **Padmapani** (the lotus bearer) : kind-hearted.
- (iii) **Manjushri** (Stimulator of understanding) : He holds a book describing 10 paramitas (spiritual perfections).
- (iv) **Maitreya** : The future Buddha.
- (v) **Kshitigriha** : guardian of purgatories.
- (vi) **Amitabha/Amitayusha** : Buddha of heaven.



### Sacred Shrines

- Lumbini, Bodh Gaya, Sarnath and Kusinagar, where the four principal events of the Buddha's life, namely Birth, Enlightenment, First Sermon and Death took place. To these are added four places Sravasti, Rajgriha, Vaishali and Sankasya—these eight places have all along been considered as the eight holy places (Ashtasthanas).
- Other centres of Buddhism in Ancient India—Amaravati and Nagarjunikonda in Andhra Pradesh; Nalanda in Bihar; Junagadh and Vallabhi in Gujarat; Sanchi and Bharhut in M.P.; Ajanta-Ellora in Maharashtra; Dhaulagiri in Orissa; Kannauj, Kaushambi and Mathura in U.P.; and Jagadala and Somapuri in West Bengal.
- Buddhist architecture developed in three forms :
  - (i) Stupa—relics of the Buddha or some prominent Buddhist monks are preserved
  - (ii) Chaitya—prayer hall
  - (iii) Vihara—residence

Buddhist Universities	Place	Founder
Nalanda	Badagaon, Bihar	Kumargupta I (Gupta ruler)
Odantpuri	Biharsharif, Bihar	Gopala (Pala ruler)
Vikramshila	Bhagalpur, Bihar	Dharmapala (Pala ruler)
Somapuri	North Bengal	Dharmapala (Pala ruler)
Jagadal	Bengal	Ramapala (Pala ruler)
Vallabhi	Gujarat	Bhattarka (Maitrak ruler)

**Royal Patrons :** Bimbisara and Ajatashatru (Magadhan ruler), Prasenjit (Kosala ruler), Udayan (Vatsa ruler), Pradyota (Avanti ruler), Ashoka and Dasharatha (Mauryan ruler), Milinda/Menander (Indo-greek ruler), Kanishka (Kushana ruler), Harshavardhana (Vardhana ruler); Gopala, Dharmapala and Rampala (Pala ruler).

- Note—** (i) *Ashoka, the greatest patron of Buddhism, called 3rd Buddhist council and sent mission comprises of his son Mahendra and his daughter Sanghamitra to Sri Lanka.*
- (ii) *Kanishka called 4th Buddhist council and sent mission to China, Korea and Japan.*
- (iii) *Palas of Bengal and Bihar were last great patrons of Buddhism.*

### Jainism

- According to Jain tradition there were 24 *Thithankaras* (literally Ford maker, across the stream of existence), the first being Rishabhadeva/Adinatha and last being Mahavira.
- The *Vishnu Purana* and the *Bhagavat Purana* describe Rishabha as an incarnation of Narayana.
- The name of two Jain Tirthankaras—*Rishabha* and *Arishtanemi*—are found in the *Rig Veda*.



➤ We have historical proof of only the last two—*Parshwanath* (23rd) and *Mahavira* (24th).

➤ *Parshwanath* was a prince of Benaras who abandoned the throne and led the life of a hermit and died at *Sammet-Shikar/Parshwanath (Parasanath) Hill, Giridih, Jharkhand*. His four main teachings (*Chaturthi*) were 1. *Ahimsa* (non-injury) 2. *Satya* (non-lying) 3. *Asteya* (non-stealing) 4. *Aparigraha* (non-possession). *Mahavira* adopted all these four teachings and added one more, that is *Brahmacharya* (Chastity) to it.

### Mahavira's Life

- Mahavira was born in 540 BC in a village *Kundgrama* near *Vaishali* in *Bihar*.
- His father *Siddhartha* was the head of the *Jnathrika Kshtriya* clan under *Vajji* of *Vaishali* and his mother *Trishala* was the sister of *Chetaka*, the king of *Vaishali*. Mahavira was also related to *Bimbisara*, the ruler of *Magadha*, who had married *Chellana*, the daughter of *Chetaka*.
- Mahavira was married to *Yashoda* (daughter of *Samarvira* king) and a produced a daughter *Anonja Priyadarshini* whose husband *Jamali*, became the first disciple of Mahavira.
- At the age of 30, after the death of his father, he renounced his family, became an ascetic and proceeded in search of truth. He was accompanied by *Makkhali Gosala*, but later due to some differences *Gosala* left him and founded *Ajivika* sect.
- At the age of 42, under a sal tree at *Jambhikagrama* on the bank of river *Rijupalika*, Mahavira attained *Kaivalya* (supreme knowledge).
- From now onwards he was called *Kevalin* (perfect learned), *Jina* or *Jitendriya* (one who conquered his senses), *Nrigantha* (free from all bonds), *Arhant* (blessed one) and *Mahavira* (the brave) and his followers were named *jain*.
- He delivered his first sermon at *Pava* to his 11 disciples (known as *11 Gandharas/Gandharvas*). Later, he founded a *Jain Sangha* (Jain commune) at *Pava*.
- At the Age of 72 in 468 BC, he passed away at *Pavapuri* near *Biharsharif* in *Bihar*. *Sudharma* only one of 11 *Ganadharas* who survived after the death of Mahavira.

### 24 Tirthankaras

Name	Symbol
1. Rishabha	Bull
2. Ajitnath	Elephant
3. Sambharnath	Horse
4. Abhiaandam	Monkey
5. Sumatinath	Curlew
6. Padmaprabhu	Red Lotus
7. Suparswanath	Swastik
8. Chandraji Prabhu	Moon
9. Suvidhinath	Crocodile
10. Shitalnath	Srivatsa
11. Shreganath	Rhinoceros
12. Vasupujya	Buffalo
13. Vimalnath	Boar
14. Anantnath	Falcon
15. Dharmanath	Vajra
16. Shantinath	Deer
17. Kuntunath	He-Goat
18. Arnath	Fish
19. Mallinath	Waterpot
20. Muniswasth	Tortoise
21. Neminath	Blue Lotus
22. Arishtanemi	Conch Shell
23. Parshwanath	Serpent
24. Mahavira	Lion



## Doctrines of Jainism

### Triratna i.e. Three Gems of Jainism

The aim of existence is to attain through the triratna of

1. *Samyak Shraddha/ Viswas* (Right faith) : It is the belief in Thirathankaras.
2. *Samyak Jnan* (Right knowledge) : It is the knowledge of the Jain creed.
3. *Samyak Karma/ Acharana* (Right action/ conduct) : It is the practice of the 5 vows of Jainism.

### Pancha Mahavaratas i.e. Five Vows of Jainism

Five vows of Jainism are : 1. *Ahimsa* (non-injury) 2. *Satya* (non-lying) 3. *Asteya* (non-stealing) 4. *Aparigraha* (non-possession) 5. *Brahmacharya* (chastity). The first four vows were laid down by Parshwanath. The fifth one was added by Mahavira.

### Types of Knowledge

There are 5 types of knowledge : 1. *Mati jnana*—Perception through activity of sense organs, including the mind 2. *Shruta jnana*—Knowledge revealed by scriptures 3. *Avadhi jnana*—Clairvoyant perception 4. *Manahparyaya jnana*—Telepathic knowledge 5. *Keval jnana*—Temporal knowledge or Omniscience.

**Syadvada i.e. The Theory of May Be/Perhaps** : All our judgements are necessarily relative, conditional and limited. According to Syadvada seven modes of prediction (*Saptabhangi Nayavad*) are possible. Absolute affirmation and absolute negation both are wrong. All judgements are conditional. Syadvada is also known as *Anekantvada* i.e. the theory of plurality or multi-sidedness.

**The Principles of Jainism as Preached by Mahavira** : 1. Rejected the authority of the Vedas and vedic rituals 2. Did not believe in the existence of God. 3. Believed in Karma and the transmigration of soul 4. Laid great emphasis on equality.

Jain Council	Year	Venue	Chairman	Patron	Result
1st	300 BC	Patliputra	Sthulabhadra	Chandragupta Maurya	Compilation of 12 Angas.
2nd	512 AD	Vallabhi	Devardhi Kshmasramana	---	Final compilation of 12 Angas and 12 Upangas.

### Jain Literature

- The sacred literature of the Svetambaras is written in a type of *Prakrit* called *Ardhamagadhi Prakrit*, and may be classified as follows : (i) 12 *Angas* (ii) 12 *Upangas* (iii) 10 *Parikarnas* (iv) 6 *Chhedasutras* (v) 4 *Mulasutras* (vi) 2 *Sutra-Granthas*.

**Note** : 14 *Purvas/Parvas*—It is the part of 12 *Angas* and the oldest text of Mahavira's preachings.



- Besides this, the important Jain texts are : (i) *Kalpasutra* (in Sanskrit)—Bhadrabahu (ii) *Bhadrabahu Charita* (iii) *Parishishta Parvan* (an appendix of *Trishashthishalaka Purush*)—Hemchandra.

### Sects of Jainism

- In 298 BC, there was a serious famine in Magadha (South Bihar) leading to a great exodus of many Jain monks to the Deccan and South India (*Shravanbelgola*) along with *Bhadrabahu* and *Chandragupta Maurya*. They returned back after 12 years. The leader of the group, which stayed back at Magadha was *Sthulabhadra*. When the Jains (Bhadrabahu and others) returned from South India, they held that complete nudity be an essential part of the teachings of Mahavira, while the monks in Magadha began to put on white clothes.
- Thus arose the two sects *Shvetambaras* (white clad) and *Digambaras* (sky-clad).
1. *Shvetambaras* (i.e. those who put on white robes)—*Sthulabhadra*
  2. *Digambaras* (i.e. those who were stark naked)—*Bhadrabahu*.

### Examples of Jain Architecture

1. Gumphas i.e. Caves e.g. Hathigumpha, Baghagumpha etc., Udaigiri and Khandagiri (Orissa)—Kharvela
2. Dilwara temples e.g. Vimalavasahi temple, Tejapala temple—Mount Abu (Rajasthan)
3. Temples—Girnar and Palitana (Gujarat)
4. Temples e.g. Pavapuri temple, Rajagriha temple—Bihar
5. Statue of *Gomateshwar/Bahubali*—Shravanbelgola (Karnataka).

### Royal Patrons

- I. North India :** 1. Nandas; Bimbisara, Ajatashatru and Udayin (Haryank); Chandragupta Maurya, Bindusara and Samprati (Mauryan)—Magadha  
2. Pradyota (Avanti) 3. Udayan (Sindhu-Sauvira) 4. Kharavela (Kalinga).
- II. South India :** 1. Ganga Dynasty 2. Kadamb Dynasty 3. Amoghavarsha (Rashtrakuta Dynasty) 4. Siddharaj Jai Singh and Kumarpala (Chaulukya/Solanki) – the last great patrons of Jainism.

## 4. Maurya Period (322 BC-185 BC)

### Sources for Mauryan History

#### 1. Literary Sources

- *Kautilya's 'Arthashastra'* : It is the most important literary source for the Mauryas. It is a treatise on government and polity. It gives a clear and methodological analysis of political and economic conditions of the Mauryan period.
- *Megasthenes's 'Indica'* : Megasthenes was the ambassador of Seleucus Nikator in the court of Chandragupta Maurya. His 'Indica' is foremost among all the foreigners' accounts for Maurya. But its original copy is lost, and it has survived only as quotations in the text of classical Greek



writers, such as *Strabo*, *Diodorous*, *Arrian*, *Plutarch* and Latin writers such as *Pliny* and *Justin*. It refers to Mauryan administration, 7-caste system, absence of slavery and usury in India etc.

- *Visakha Datta's 'Mudra Rakshasa'* : Though it was written during Gupta Period, it describes how Chandragupta Maurya get Chanakya's assistance to overthrow the Nandas. Besides this, it gives an excellent account of the prevailing socio-economic conditions.
- *Puranas* : Though they are a collection of legends interspread with religious teachings, they give us the chronology and lists of Mauryan kings.
- *Buddhist Literature* : 1. Indian Buddhist text *Jatakas* (a part of Khuddaknikaya of Suttapitaka which describes 549 stories of Buddha's previous births) reveal a general picture of socio-economic conditions of Mauryan period. 2. Ceylonese Buddhist chronicles *Dipavamsa* and *Mahavamsa* describe the part played by Ashoka in spreading Buddhism to Sri Lanka. 3. Tibetan Buddhist text *Divyavadana* gives information about Ashoka and his efforts to spread Buddhism.

## 2. Archaeological Sources

- *Ashokan Edicts and inscriptions* : There are Rock Edicts, Pillar Edicts and Cave Inscriptions located at several places in the Indian sub-continent. Their importance came to be appreciated only after their decipheration by *James Prinsep* in 1837 and also the identification of Ashoka as the author of these edicts in the beginning of the 20th century. Majority of them are in the nature of Ashoka's proclamations to the public at large, and only a small group of them describe his own acceptance of Buddhism and his relationship with the Sangha (Commune). Though *Prakrit* was the language used in them, the script varied from region to region (*Kharoshti* in the North-West, *Greek* and *Aramaic* in the West and *Brahmi* in the East of India).
- *Other Inscriptions* : Junagadh Rock Inscription of Rudradaman, Sogaura Copper Plate Inscription in Gorakhpur district of U.P., Mahasthan Inscription in Bogara district of Bangladesh. – All these are directly concerned with the Mauryan Period, though they are believed to be not necessarily those of Ashoka.
- *Material Remains* : Wooden palace of Chandragupta Maurya, Northern Black Polished Ware (NBPW), Silver and Copper punch-marked coins found in Kumharar (Patna) and other places are the material remains of the Mauryan period.

### Ashokan Edicts Contents and Inscriptions

#### Found at

#### I. Rock Edicts

- |                          |                              |   |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| (i) 14 Major Rock Edicts | Various Principles of Dhamma | Manshera (Hazara, Pakistan), Shahbajgarhi (Peshwar, Pakistan), Kalsi (Dehradun, Uttarakhand), Junagadh (Girnar, Gujarat), Sopara (Thana, Maharashtra), Yerragudi (Kurnul, Andhra Pradesh), Dhauili (Puri, Orissa), Jaugada (Ganjam, Orissa) |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|---|



**Ashokan Edicts Contents and Inscriptions****Found at**

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| (ii) 2 Kalinga Rock Edicts     | New system of Dauli or Tosali (Puri, Orissa), Jaugada administration after (Ganjam, Orissa) the Kalinga war  |
| (iii) Minor Rock Edicts        | Personal history of Ashoka and Bhabru-Bairat (Rajasthan), Rupanath (MP), summary of his Gavimath, Palkig-undu, Siddhpur, Jating dhamma Rameshwar, Brahmagiri (Karnataka) |
| (iv) Bhabru-Bairat Rock Edicts | Ashoka's conversion to Buddhism Bhabru-Bairat (Rajasthan)  |

**II. Pillar Edicts**

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| (i) 7 Pillar Edicts         | Appendix to rock Edicts Merrut-Delhi (Chhoti Lata), Topra-Delhi (Badi Lata), Allahabad (UP); Lauriya Nandangadh, Lauriya Areraj and Rampurva (Bihar) |
| (ii) 4 Minor Pillar Edicts  | Signs of Ashoka's fanaticism to Dhamma Sanchi (MP), Sarnath and Allahabad (UP)   |
| (iii) 2 Tarai Pillar Edicts | Ashoka's respect for Buddhism Rummandei/Lumbini and Nigaliva (Tarai of Nepal)  |

**III. Cave Edicts**

- |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| 3 Barabar Cave Edicts | Ashoka's toleration Barabar Hills (Gaya, Bihar) |
|-----------------------|---|

**Ashokan 14 Major Rock Edicts****Contents**

- I. Prohibition of animal sacrifices and festive gatherings.
- II. Measures of social welfare.
- III. Respect to Brahmanas.
- IV. Courtesy to relatives, elders, consideration for animals.
- V. Appointment of Dhamma Mahamatras and their duties.
- VI. Need for efficient organisation of administration (orders to Dhamma Mahamatras).
- VII. Need for tolerance among all religious sects.
- VIII. System of Dhamma-yatras.
- IX. Attack on meaningless ceremonies and rituals.
- X. Conquest through Dhamma instead of war.
- XI. Explanation of Dhamma-policy.
- XII. Appeal for tolerance among all religious sects.
- XIII. Kalinga war, mention 5 contemporary Hellenic (Greek) kings.
- IV. Inspiration to spend religious life.



### Origin of the Mauryas

- The Puranas describe them as *Shudras*.
- 'Mudrakshasa' of Vishakhadatta uses the terms *Vrishal/ Kulhina* (of low clan).
- The Classical writers, such as Justin, describe Chandragupta only as a man of humble origin.
- The Junagarh Rock Inscription of Rudradaman (150 AD) has some indirect evidence, suggesting that the Mauryas might have been of *Vaishya* origin.
- The Buddhist work, on the other hand, try to link the Mauryan dynasty with the *Sakya Kshatriya* clan to which Buddha belonged. According to them, the region from which the Mauryas came was full of peacocks (*Mor*), and hence they came to be known as '*Moriyas*'. It is obvious, from this that the Buddhists were trying to elevate the social position of Ashoka (their patron) and his predecessors.
- In conclusion, we can say that the Mauryas belonged to the *Moriya* tribe and were certainly of a low caste, though it is not clear as to which low caste.

### Chandragupta Maurya : 322 BC-298 BC

- Chandragupta dethroned the last Nanda ruler *Dhananand* and occupied *Patliputra* in 322 BC with the help of *Kautilya (Chankya)*.
- In 305 BC, Chandragupta Maurya defeated *Seleucus Nikator*, who surrendered a vast territory including Aria (herat), Arachosia (Kandhar), Gedrosia (Baluchistan) and Paropanisade (Kabul), in return for 500 elephants. According to treaty between Chandragupta and Seleucus, the Hindukush became boundry between their states.
- *Megasthenes* was a Greek ambassador sent to the court of Chandragupta Maurya by Seleucus Nikator.
- Chandragupta became a jain and went to *Chandragiri Hill, Sravanbelgola* (Karnataka) with Bhadrabahu, where he died by slow starvation (*Kaya-Klesha/ Salekhan*).
- Under Chanragupta Maurya, for the first time, the whole of Northern India was united.
- Trade flourished, agriculture was regulated, weights and measures were standardised and money came into use.
- Taxation, sanitation and famine relief became the concerns of the state.

### Bindusara : 298 BC-273 BC

- Chandragupta Maurya was succeeded by his son Bindusara.
- Bindusara, known to the Greeks as *Amitrochates* (derived from the Sanskrit word *Amitraghata* i.e. slayers of foes), is said to have carried his arms to the Deccan (upto Mysore).
- Bindusara asked *Antiochus I* of *Syria* to send some sweet wine, dried figs and a sophist. Antiochus I sent wine and figs but politely replied that Greek philosophers are not for sale.
- Bindusara patronised *Ajivikas*.



**Ashoka : 273 BC-232 BC**

- It appears from the available evidence (Buddhist literature mainly) that there was a struggle for the throne among the princes on the death of Bindusara.
- According to Buddhist tradition, Ashoka usurped the throne after killing his 99 brothers and spared *Tissa*, the youngest one. Radhagupta a minister of Bindusara helped him in fratricidal struggle.
- This war of succession accounts for interregnum of four years (273-269 BC), and only after securing his position on the throne, Ashoka had himself formally crowned in 269 BC.
- Under Ashoka, the Mauryan Empire reached its climax. For the first time, the whole of the sub-continent, leaving out the extreme south, was under imperial control.

Ashoka	Maski minor rock edict.
Devanampriyas Ashoka Rajas	Gurjara minor rock edict
Raja Ashoka	Nitlur minor rock edict
Raja Ashoka Dewanampiya	Udegolum minor rock edict.
Piyadassi Raja Magadh	Bhabru-Bairat minor rock edict.
Piyadassi Raja	Barabar cave inscription
Piyadassi	Kandhar major rock edict and Deepvamsa.
Ashoka Maurya	Rudradaman's Junagarh rock edict.
Ashoka Vardhan	Puranas.

- Ashoka fought the *Kalinga war* in 261 BC in 9th years of his coronation. The king was moved by the massacre in this war and therefore abandoned the policy of physical occupation in favour of policy of cultural conquest. In other words, *Bherighosa* was replaced by *Dhammaghosa*.
- Ashoka was not an extreme pacifist. He did not pursue the policy of peace for sake of peace under all conditions. Thus, he retained Kalinga after his conquest and incorporated it into his empire.
- Ashoka sent missionaries to the kingdoms of the Cholas and the Pandyas, and five states ruled by Greek kings (Antiochus II, Syria; Philadelphos Ptolemy II, Egypt; Antigonos, Mecedonia; Maggus, Syrina; Alexander, Epirus). We also know that he sent missionaries to Ceylon (Sri Lanka) and Suvarnabhumi (Burna) and also parts of South-East Asia.

**Ashoka's Dhamma**

- Ashoka's Dhamma cannot be regarded as a sectarian faith. Its broad objective was to preserve the social order it ordained that people should obey their parents, pay respect to Brahmanas and Buddhist monks and show mercy to slaves and servants.
- He held that if people behaved well they would attain Swarga (heaven). He did never say that they would attain Nirvana, which was the goal of Buddhist teachings.



**Later Mauryas : 232 BC-185 BC**

- The Mauryan dynasty lasted 137 years.
- Ashoka's death was followed by the division of the Mauryan Empire into two parts-Western and Eastern.
- The Western part came to be ruled by *Kunala* (son of Ashoka) and the Eastern part came to be ruled by *Dasaratha*.
- The last Mauryan ruler, *Brihadratha*, was assassinated in 185 BC by his commander-in-chief, *Pushyamitra Sunga*, who established his own Sunga dynasty.
- **Causes for the Decline** : 1. Highly centralised administration (*Romila Thapar*) 2. Pacific policy of Ashoka (*H.C. Raychaudhuri*) 3. Brahmanical reaction (*H.P. Sastri*) 4. The partition of the Mauryan Empire 5. Weak later-Mauryan Rulers 6. Pressure on Mauryan economy 7. Neglect of North-West Frontier.

**Mauryan kings    Other names of the king    Ambassdor (Greek king)**

**Chandragupta**    Sandrocottus—Strabo, Justin Megasthenese (302-298 BC)  
 Androcottus—Arrian, Plutarch (Seleucus Nikator-Persia and  
 Vrishala / Kulahina (i.e. of Babylonia)  
 low clan)—Vishakhadatta  
 (Mudrarakshasa)

**Bindusara**    Amitrochates—Greek texts    Dimachos  
 Vindupala—Chinese text    (Antiochus I - Syria)  
 Sinhasena—Jain text    Dionysius (Philadelphos /  
 Bhadrāsara—Vayu Purana    Ptolemy II-Egypt)

**Mauryan Administration****I. Central Administration**

- **The king** : The Mauryan government was a centralised bureaucracy of which the nucleus was the king. According to Kautilya / Chanakya, there are 7 elements of states (*Saptanga theory*)—*Raja* (the king), *Amatya* (the secretaries), *Janapada* (territory), *Durg* (Fort), *Kosha* (the treasure), *Sena* (Army) and *Mitra* (Friend). The king was regarded as the soul among all the seven elements of the state.
- **The Mantri Prishad** : The king was assisted by Mantri Parishad, whose members included—(i) *The Yuvaraja* (the crown prince) (ii) *The purohita* (the chief priest) (iii) *The Senapati* (the commander-in-chief) (iv) a few other ministers.

**Important officials**

Sannidhata	Chief treasury officer
Samaharta	The collector general of revenue
Vyavaharika (Dharmastha)	Chief Justice of Dharmasthiya Nyayalaya (Civil Court)
Pradeshta	Chief Justice of Kantakashodhan Nyayalaya (Criminal Court)



<b>Dhamma Mahamatra</b>	A new post created by Ashoka, empowered with the dual functions of propagating Dhamma and taking care of the common folk for their material well-being.
<b>Rashtrapala / Kumara</b>	The viceroys in charge of a province
<b>Pradesika</b>	They were the modern district magistrate
<b>Rajukas</b>	They were the later day Patwaris and responsible for surveying and assessing the land
<b>Yukta</b>	A subordinate revenue officer of the district level
<b>Sthanika</b>	The collecting officer directly under the control of the Pradeshika
<b>Gopa</b>	Responsible for accounts
<b>Nagaraka</b>	The officer in charge of the city administration
<b>Akshapatala</b>	Accountant General
<b>Sitaadhyaksha</b>	Supervised agriculture
<b>Panyadhyaksha</b>	Superintendent of commerce
<b>Samsthaadhyaksha</b>	Superintendent of Market
<b>Pautavadhyaksha</b>	Superintendent of weights and measures
<b>Navaadhyaksha</b>	Superintendent of ships
<b>Sulkaadhyaksha</b>	Collector of tolls
<b>Akaradhyaksha</b>	Superintendent of mines
<b>Lohadhyaksha</b>	Superintendent of Iron

## II. Provincial Administration

### Province

<b>Uttarapatha</b> i.e. Northern Province	<b>Capital</b> Taxila
<b>Avantirashtra</b> i.e. Western Province	Ujjain
<b>Prachi</b> i.e. Eastern and Central Province	Patliputra
<b>Kalinga</b> i.e. Eastern Province	Toshali
<b>Dakshinapatha</b> i.e. Southern Province	Suvarnagiri

**Note :** According to the Junagadh Rock Edict of Rudradaman, Saurashtra was governed by *Pushyagupta*, the vaishya, at the time of Chandragupta Maurya and by the Yavan king *Tushaspa* at the time of Ashoka.

### Administrative Unit

### Head

<b>Chakra</b> (i.e. province)	Rashtrapala / Kumara
<b>Ahar / Vishaya</b> (i.e. District)	Pradeshika (administrative) and Rajuka (land revenue)
<b>Sangrahana</b> (a group of 10 villages)	Gopa
<b>Gram</b> (i.e. village)	Gramika



### III. Municipal Administration

- Kautilya devotes a full chapter to the rules of the *Nagarak* i.e. city superintendent. His chief duty was maintenance of law and order.
- Megasthenese account of the system : 6 committees of five members each, and their functions; 1st – Industrial Arts, 2nd – Entertainment of Foreigners, 3rd – Registration of Births and Deaths, 4th – Trade and Commerce, 5th – Public sale of manufactured goods, and 6th – Collection of taxes on the articles sold (1/10th of purchase price).

### IV. Army

- The most striking feature of Mauryan administration was the maintenance of a huge army. They also maintained a Navy.
- According to Megasthenese the administration of Army was carried by a board of 30 officers divided into 6 committee, each committee consisting of 5 members. They are (i) Infantry (ii) Cavalry (iii) Elephants (iv) Chariots (v) Navy (vi) Transport.
- In the Mauryan period, there were two types of *Gudhapurushas* (detectives) – *Sansthan* (Stationary) and *Sanchari* (Wandering).

### Economy

- The state controlled almost all economic activities.
- Tax collected from peasants varied from 1/4 to 1/6 of the produce.
- The state also provided irrigation facilities (*Setubandha*) and charged water-tax.
- Tolls were also levied on commodities brought to town for sale and they were collected at gate.
- The state enjoyed monopoly in mining, forest, salt, sale of liquor, manufacture of arms etc.
- *Sohgaura* (Gorakhpur district, U.P.) copper plate inscription and *Mahasthan* (Bogara district, Bangladesh) inscription deal with the relief measures to be adopted during a famine.
- **Important ports** : *Bharukachch/Bharoch* and *Supara* (Western coast), *Tamralipti* in Bengal (Eastern coast).
- During Mauryan period, the punch-marked coins (mostly of silver) were the common units of transactions.

### Society

- *Kautilya/Chanakya/Vishnugupta* is not as rigid on the Varna system as the earlier Smriti writers.
- Kautilya's 'Arthashastra' looked upon the *Shudras* as an Aryan community which is distinguished from Malechha or non-Aryan community.
- Reduction of gap between the *Vaishyas* (most of whom were now concentrating on trade though others continued cultivation) and the *Shudras* (quite a few of whom were now agriculturists and others being artisans).
- *Megasthenese* states that Indian society was divided into 7 classes :  
1. Philosophers 2. Farmers 3. Soldiers 4. Herdsmen 5. Artisans 6. Magistrates 7. Councillors. The 'classes' mentioned above appear to have been economic than social.



- Though Megasthenese stated that there were no slavery in India; yet, according to Indian sources, slavery was a recognised institution during Mauryan reign. It appears that Megasthenese was thinking of slavery in full legal sense as it existed in the West.
- Women occupied a high position and freedom in the Mauryan society. According to Kautilya, women were permitted to have a divorce or remarry. Women were employed as personal body-guards of the king, spies and in other diverse jobs.

### Mauryan Art

- Anand Coomarswamy classified Mauryan Art into two groups :
  1. **Royal/Court Art** : The Royal Palace of Chandragupta Maurya (Kumharar, Patna) and City of Patliputra, Ashokan Pillars, Caves, Stupas etc.
  2. **Folk/Popular Art** : (i) Figure Sculpture of Yaksha-Yakshini etc. e.g. Yaksha of Parkham (Mathura), Yakshini of Besanagar/Vidisha (M.P.), Chanwar-bearer Yakshini of Didarganj (Patna). (ii) Terracotta objects.
- The Mauryas introduced stone masonry on large scale during Ashoka.
- Fragments of stone pillars and wooden floor and ceiling indicating the existence of an 80-pillared hall have been discovered at Kumhrar on outskirts of Patna. Seeing this *Fahien* remarks as follows : '*These palaces are so beautiful and excellent that they appear to be the creation of God rather than of men*'.
- The pillars represent the masterpieces of Mauryan sculpture. Each pillar is made of single piece of sandstone, only their capitals, which are beautiful pieces of sculpture in form of lion or bulls, are joined with pillar on the top.
- Four lion capital at Sarnath and Sanchi. Lioned capital of Sarnath was adopted as 'National Emblem' of India on 26 Jan., 1950.
- Single lion capital at Rampurva and Lauriya Nandangarh.
- Single bull capital at Rampurva.
- A carved elephant at Dhauli and engraved elephant at Kalsi.
- The Mauryan artisans who started the practice of hewing out caves from rocks for monks to live in. The earliest example are *Barabar caves* (Sudama, World Hut, Chaupada of Karna, Rishi Lomesh) in Gaya (Ashokan). The other examples are *Nagarjuni caves* in Gaya (*Dasharath*).
- Stupas were built throughout the empire to enshrine the relics of Buddha. Of these, the most famous are at Sanchi and Bharhuta.

'At all times, whether I am eating, or am in the women's apartments, or in my inner apartments, or at the cattleshed, or in my carriage, or in my gardens—wherever I may be—my Mahamattar should keep me in touch with public business'.

—Rock Edict VI

'All men are my children'.

—Kalinga Rock Edict I (Dhauli)



## 5.I. Post-Maurya/Pre-Gupta Period (185 BC-319 AD)

### I. Native Successors of Mauryas

**Sunga Dynasty : 185 BC - 73 BC**

[Capital-Vidisha (M.P.)]

- Sunga Dynasty was established by *Pushymitra Sunga*, a Brahmin Commander-in-Chief of last Mauryan ruler named Brihadratha in 185 BC.
- Pushyamitra was a staunch adherent of orthodox Hinduism. However, the great Buddhist stupa at Bharhut (in M.P.) was built during the reign of Sungas.
- Pushyamitra was succeeded by his son *Agnimitra*, the hero of Kalidasa's drama '*Malvikagnimitra*'.
- After Agnimitra, a series of weak rulers such as Vasumitra, Vajramitra, Bhagabhadra, Devabhuti, followed, leading to the decline of the dynasty.
- During their rule there was a revival of Brahminical influence. The Bhagavata religion became important.
- *Patanjali*, author of the 'Mahabhasya', was born at Gonarda in Central India. Patanjali was the priest of 2 Asvamedha Yajnas, performed by Pushymitra Sunga.
- In arts, the Bharhut Stupa is the most famous monument of the Sunga period.
- The fine gateway railing which surrounds the Sanchi stupa, built by Ashoka, constructed during the Sunga period.
- Other examples of Sunga Art: Vihar, Chaitya and Stupa of Bhaja (Poona), Amaravati Stupa, Nasika Chaitya etc.

**Kanva Dynasty : 73 BC - 28 BC**

[Capital - Patliputra]

- In 73 BC, Devabhuti, the last ruler of the Sunga dynasty, was murdered by his minister *Vasudeva*, who usurped the throne and founded the Kanva dynasty.
- The period of Kanva rule came to an end in 28 BC.

**Satavahana Dynasty : 60 BC - 225 AD**

[Capital - Pratishthana/Paithan (Maharashtra)]

- The most important of the native successors of the Mauryas in the Deccan and Central India were the Satvahanas.
- The Satvahanas are considered to be identical with the Andhras who were mentioned in the Puranas.
- The early Satvahana kings appeared not in Andhra but in Maharashtra where most of their early inscriptions have been found.
- *Simuka* (60 BC - 37 BC) was the founder of the Satvahana dynasty.
- *Satakarni I*, its 3rd ruler, raised its power and prestige by conquests.
- *Hala*, its 17th ruler, was the author of 'Gathasaptasati' or, 'Sattasai' in Prakrit. *Gunadhyā*, the author of 'Vrihat Katha' (in Prakrit), was the contemporary of Hala.



- It was *Gautamiputra Satakarni* (106-130 AD) who revived the Satavahana power and defeated the Saka Ksatrap Nahapana. He was the greatest Satavahana ruler (23rd Satavahana ruler).
- *Vasishthiputra Sri Satakarni*, its 24th ruler, was married to the daughter of Saka Kstrapa Rudradaman, but defeated by him twice.
- *Yajna Sri Satakarni*, its 27th ruler, was the dynasty's last great ruler.
- *Pulamavi III*, its 30th ruler, was the last Satavahana ruler.
- Satavahanas were finally succeeded by the Ikshvakus in 3rd Century AD.
- Satavahanas started the practice of donating land with fiscal and administrative immunities to Brahmanas and Buddhist monks, which eventually weakened their authority. The earliest inscriptional evidence of land grant in India belongs to 1st century BC.
- Under the Satavahanas, many Chaityas (worship halls) and Viharas (monasteries) were cut out from rocks mainly in North-West Deccan or Maharashtra. The famous examples were *Nasik*, *Kanheri* and *Karle*.
- Stupas (large round structure erected over a sacred relic) were seen scattered all around Ellora. The most famous of these attributed to the Satavahana period are *Amravati*, a sculptural treasure house, and *Nagarjunakonda*.
- The official language of the Satavahanas was *Prakrit*.
- The Satavahanas issued their coins in lead (mainly), copper, bronze and potin.

#### Cheti/Chedi Dynasty of Kalinga

- The history of Kalinga after the death of Ashoka is shrouded in obscurity. A new dynasty, known as the Cheti or Chedi dynasty, rose in the region probably in the 1st century BC.
- Our information about this dynasty is derived solely from the *Hathigumpha inscription* (near Bhubaneswar, Orissa) of *Kharavela*, the 3rd ruler of dynasty.
- A follower of Jainism, Kharavela was liberal patron of Jain monks for whose residence he constructed caves on the *Udayagiri* hill, near Bhubaneswar in Orissa.

## II. Foreign Successors of Mauryas

### The Indo-Greeks : 2nd Century BC

- Indo-Greeks (Bactrian Greeks) were the first foreign rulers of North-Western India in the Post-Maurya period.
- The most famous Indo-Greek ruler was *Menander* (165 BC-145 BC), also known as *Milinda*. He was converted to Buddhism by Nagasena or Nagarjuna.
- The Indo-Greek rule is important in the history of India because of the large number of coins which they issued.
- The Indo-Greeks were the first rulers in India to issue coins which can definitely be attributed to the kings.
- They were the first to issue gold coins.



- They introduced Hellenic i.e. Greek features in art giving rise to *Gandhar school* in the North-Western India.

### The Sakas : 1st Century BC - 4th Century AD

- The *Sakas*, also known as *Scythians*, replaced the Indo-Greeks in India.
- Among the five branches of Sakas with their seats of power in different parts of India, the most important was the one which ruled in Western India till the 4th Century AD.
- The most famous Saka ruler in India was *Rudradaman* (130 AD-150 AD). He is famous not only for his military conquests (particularly against the Satavahanas) but also for his public works (he repaired the famous Sudarsan lake of the Mauryan period) and his patronage of Sanskrit (he issued the first-ever long inscription in chaste Sanskrit).
- Other important Saka ruler in India were Nahapana, Ushavadeva, Ghamatika, Chashtana etc.
- In about 58 BC a king of Ujjain - Vikramaditya - is supposed to have fought effectively against the Sakas. An era called *Vikrama Samvat* is reckoned from 58 BC.

### The Parthians : 1st Century BC - 1st Century AD

- Originally the *Parthians (Pahlavas)* lived in Iran, they replaced the Sakas in North-Western India, but controlled an area much smaller than the Sakas.
- The most famous Parthian king was *Gondaphernes* in whose reign *St. Thomas* is said to have come to India for the propagation of Christianity.

### The Kushans : 1st Century AD - 3rd Century AD

- The Kushans were one of the five Yeuchi clans of Central Asia.
- They replaced the Parthians in North-Western India and then expanded to the lower Indus basin and the upper and middle Gangetic basin.
- The first Kushan dynasty was founded by *Kadphises I/ Kujul Kadphises*. The second king was *Kadphises II/ Vema Kadphises* who issued gold coins.
- The second Kushan dynasty was founded by *Kanishka*. Its kings extended the Kushan power over upper India. Their capitals were at *Peshawar (Purushapura)* and *Mathura*.
- The most famous Kushan ruler was Kanishka (78 AD - 101 AD), also known as 'Second Ashoka'. He started an era in 78 AD which is now known as the *Saka era* and is used by the Government of India.
- Kanishka was a great patron of Mahayana Buddhism. In his reign *4th Buddhist council* was held in *Kundalavana, Kashmir* where the doctrines of the Mahayana form of Buddhism were finalised.
- The last great Kushan ruler was Vasudeva I.
- The Kushans controlled famous *silk route* starting from China, passing through their empire on to Iran and Western Asia. This route was a source of great income to the Kushans.



- The Kushans were the first rulers in India to issue gold coins on a wide scale.
- In the royal court of Kanishka a host of scholars found patronage. *Parsva*, *Vasumitra*, *Asvaghosha*, *Nagarjuna*, *Charak* and *Mathara* were some of them.

### Facts About Post-Mauryas

**Three school of Sculpture :** 1. *Amaravati* School (150 BC - 400 AD) – Satvahanas 2. *Gandhar* School (50 BC - 5th Century AD) – Saka - Kushans 3. *Mathura* School (150 AD - 300 AD) – Saka-Kushans.

**Note :** The influence of Greek sculpture is very evident in the Gandhar school, while Mathura school, evolved an indigenous form.

- In 46-47 AD, *Hippalus*, a greek sailor, discovered the monsoon sea-route to India from West Asia.
- **Important ports :** *Barygaza* (*Bharoch*) and *Barbairicum* (Western Coast); *Aricamedu* (*Podeku* according to 'Periplus') – near Pandicheri – Eastern Coast.
- 'Bullion was flowing out of Rome to India' — *Pliny*.
- 'Geographica' — *Strabo*, 'Geography' — *Ptolemy*, 'Natural History' — *Pliny*, 'Periplus of the Erithryan Sea' — Unknown.
- India had contacts with Central Asia, China, Graceo-Roman World and South-East Asia.

## 5.II. The Sangam Period (1st-3rd Century AD)

### Three Early Kingdoms

Kingdom	Emblem	Capital	First Ruler	Famous Ruler
The Chera	Bow	Vanji / Karayur; Main Ports : Muzris and Tondi	Udiyangeral	Senguttuvan (Red Chera)
The Chola	Tiger	Uraiaur – Inland capital – famous centre for cotton trade; Puhar / Kaveripattanam – coastal capital – main port	Elara	Karikala
The Pandya	Fish	Madurai – Inland capital – venue of 1st and 3rd sangam; Korkai / Colchoi – coastal capital – famous for pearls.	Mudukudumi	Nendujeliam

### The Cheras

- The Chera country occupied the portion of both Kerala and Tamil Nadu.
- The capital of Cheras was *Vanji*.
- Its main ports were *Muzris* and *Tondi*.
- The Romans set up two regiment at *Muzris* (identical with *Cranganore*) in Chera country. They also built a temple of Augustus at Muzris.



- One of the earliest and better known among Chera rulers was *Udiyangeral*. It is said that he fed both the armies of Kurukshetra war and so earned the title *Udiyangeral*.
- The greatest of Chera king, however, was *Senguttuvan* or *Red Chera*. It is said that he invaded the North and even crossed the Ganges.
- He was also the founder of the famous *Pattini cult* related to worship of goddess of chastity—*Kannagi*.

### The Cholas

- The Chola kingdom called as Chola mandalam was situated to the North-East of Pandya kingdom between Pennar and Vellar rivers.
- The Chola kingdom corresponded to the modern Tanjore and Tiruchchirapalli districts.
- Its inland capital was *Uraiyaur*, a place famous for cotton trade. One of the main sources of wealth for Cholas was trade in cotton cloth.
- *Puhar* identical with *Kaveripattanam* was the main port of Cholas and served as alternative capital of Cholas.
- The earliest known Chola king was *Elara* who conquered Sri Lanka and ruled over it for nearly 50 years.
- Their greatest king was *Karikala* (man with charred leg) who founded *Puhar (Kaveripattanam)* and constructed 160 km of embankment along the Kaveri river with the help of 12,000 Sri Lankan slaves.
- They maintained an efficient navy.
- The Cholas were wiped out in the attack of Pallavas from the North.

### The Pandyas

- The Pandyas were first mentioned by Megasthenes, who said their Kingdom was famous for pearls.
- The Pandya territory included modern districts of Tirunelveli, Ramand and Madurai in Tamil Nadu. It had its capital at Madurai, situated on the banks of Vaigai river.
- The Pandya king profited from trade with Roman Empire and sent emissaries to Roman emperor *Augustus* and *Trojan*.
- The Pandyas find mention in the Ramayana and Mahabharata.
- The earliest known Pandyan ruler was *Mudukudumi*.
- The greatest Pandya king, *Nendujelian*, accused *Kovalan* of theft. As a result, the city of Madurai was laid under a curse by *Kannagi* (Kovalan's wife).

### Sangam Administration

- The king was the centre of administration. He was called *Ko, Mannam, Vendan Korraivan* or *Iraivan*.
- *Avai* was the court of the crowned monarch.
- **Important officials (Panchmahasabha)** : 1. *Amaichchar* (Ministers) 2. *Purohitar* (Priests) 3. *Dutar* (Envoys) 4. *Senapatiyar* (Commander) 5. *Orar* (Spies).



- The kingdom was divided into *Mandalam/ Nadu* (Province), *Ur* (town), *Perur* (Big village), *Sirur* (Small village).
- *Pattinam* (Name of coastal town), *Puhar* (Harbour areas), *Cheri* (Suburb of town).
- **Revenue Administration :** *Karai* (Land Tax), *Irai* (Tribute paid by feudatories and booty collected in war), *Ulgu* (Custom duties), *Iravu* (Extra demand or forced gift), *Variyam* (A well known unit of territory yielding tax), *Variyar* (Tax collector).
- It is said that in Chola territory, watered by Kaveri, the space in which an elephant could lie down produced enough to feed seven persons. It implies the lands were very fertile with irrigation facilities.

### Sangam Literature

Sl. No.	Venue	Under the Chairmanship of	Surviving Texts	Patron (Pandya Rulers)
Ist Sangam	Ten-Madurai (Old capital of Pandyas, engulfed in sea)	Agastasya (Agattiyar)	x	89
IInd Sangam	Kapatapuram/ Alvai (engulfed in sea)	Agastaya (founder chairman); Tolakapiyyar (later chairman)	only 'Tolkappiyam'	59
IIIrd Sangam	North Madurai	Nakkirar	Ettutogai, Pattu-pattu, Patinenkilakanakku etc.	49

- *Sangam* was an assembly of Tamil poets held under royal patronage of Pandyan kings in Madurai. According to tradition, the assembly lasted for 9,990 years and was attended by 8,598 poets and 197 Pandyan kings.
- *The first Sangam* was attended by Gods and legendary sages. All its works have perished.
- Of *the second Sangam*, the only surviving work is *Tolkappiyam*, an early work on Tamil grammar written by *Tolakapiyyar*.
- Of *the third Sangam*, the mostly works are surviving. These are *Ettutogai* (i.e. 8 anthologies), *Pattupattu* (i.e. 10 idylls), *Patinenkilakanakku* (i.e. 18 didactical texts) etc.
- *Ettutogai* and *Pattupattu* are called *Melakanakku* (18 major works) and narrative in form. *Patinenkanakku* is called *Kilakanakku* (18 minor works) and didactic in form.
- *Kural* or *Muppal*, a part of *Patinenkilakanakku* and written by *Tiruvalluvar* is called 'The Bible of Tamil Land'. It is treatise on polity, ethics and social norms.

**The Epics :** *Silappadikaram*, *Manimekalai*, *Sivaga Sindamani* etc.

- *Silappadikaram (the story of the Anklet)* : Written by *Ilango Adigal*, it deals with the story of Kovalan and Madhavi of Kaveripattinam. It is called 'Illiyaad of Tamil poetry'.



- **Manimekalai** : Written by *Sittalai Sattanar*, it deals with the adventures of Manimekalai, the daughter born of Kovalan and Madhavi. It is a sequel of Silappadikaram and strongly tinged with Buddhism.
- **Sivaga Sindamani** (*Jivaka Chintamani*): Written by Jain *Tiruttakrdevas* and strongly tinged with Jainism.
- **Bharatam** : Written by *Perudevanar*.

Panchtinai (five Tamil regions)	Occupation	Inhabitants
Kurinji (hilly backwoods or montane)	Hunting, Gathering	Kurvar, Vetar
Palai (Parched or arid zone)	Cattlelifting, Highway robbery	Eyinar, Maravar
Mullai (Pastoral tract)	Shifting Agriculture, Animal husbandry	Ayar, Idaiyar
Marutam (Wetland)	Plough Agriculture	Ulavar, Vellalar
Neital (littoral/coastal)	Fishing, Salt extraction	Paratavar, Valayar

## 6. Gupta Period (319 AD-540 AD)

- In 4th Century AD a new dynasty, the Guptas, arose in Magadha and established a large kingdom over the greater part of Northern India (though their empire was not as large as that of the Mauryas). Their rule lasted for more than 200 years.
- This period is referred as the 'Classical Age' or 'Golden Age' of ancient India and was perhaps the most prosperous era in the Indian history.
- According to epigraphic evidence, the founder of the dynasty was a person named *Gupta*. He used the simple title of Maharaja.
- Gupta was succeeded by his son *Ghatotkach*, who also inherited the title of Maharaja.

### The Gupta Dynasty

Chandragupta I	319-334 AD
Samudragupta	335-380 AD
Ramgupta	380 AD
Chandragupta II (Vikramaditya)	380-414 AD
Kumargupta (Mahendraditya)	415-455 AD
Skandagupta I	455-467 AD
Purugupta →	
Kumargupta II →	
Buddhgupta →	
Narsimhagupta →	
Kumargupta III	467-540 AD

### Chandragupta I : 319-334 AD

- He was the first Gupta ruler to assume the title of *Maharajadhiraja*.
- He strengthened his kingdom by matrimonial alliance with the powerful family of Lichchhavis who were the rulers of Mithila. His marriage to Lichchhvi princess *Kumaradevi*, brought to him enormous power, resources and prestige. He took advantage of the situation and occupied the whole of fertile Gangetic Valley.
- He started the *Gupta Era* in 319-20 AD.
- Chandragupta I was able to establish his authority over Magadha, Prayaga and Saketa.
- **Original type of Gold Coins (Dinaras)** : Chandragupta I-Kumaradevi type.



**Samudragupta : 335-380 AD**

- Samudragupta was the greatest king of Gupta dynasty.
- The most detailed and authentic record of his reign is preserved in the *Prayaga Prasasti/Allahabad pillar inscription*, composed by his court poet *Harisena*.
- According to Prayaga Prasasti, he was a great conqueror.
- In the Gangetic Valley and Central India, Samudragupta annexed the territories of the defeated monarchs, but in South India he remained content with victories alone and did not annex the territories of the vanquished rulers.
- Samudragupta's military campaigns justify description of him as the '*Napoleon of India*' by *V.A. Smith*.
- The reference to his dominion over Java, Sumatra and Malaya islands in the sea shows that he had a navy.
- When he died his mighty empire bordered that of the Kushan of Western province (modern Afghanistan and Pakistan) and Vakatakas in Deccan (modern Southern Maharashtra).
- His greatest achievement was the political unification of most of India or Aryavarta into a formidable power.
- **Titles :** *Kaviraja* i.e. king of poets (Prayaga Prasasti), *Param Bhagavat* (Nalanda copper plate), *Ashvamedha-parakrama* i.e. whose might was demonstrated by the horse-sacrifice (coin), *Vikram* i.e. prowess (coin), *Sarva-raj-ochchhetta* i.e. uprooter of all kings (coin) etc. Note: Only Gupta ruler had the title of *Sarva-raj-ochchhetta*.
- **Original types of Gold Coins (Dinars):** Garud type, Dhanurdhari i.e. Archer type, Axe type, Ashvamedha type, Vyaghrahanan i.e. Tiger-killing type, Veenavadan i.e. lute playing type.
- Samudragupta was a Vaishnavite.
- According to the Chinese writer Wang-Hiuen-Tse, *Meghavarna*, king of Sri Lanka, sent an embassy to Samudragupta for his permission to build a monastery for Buddhist pilgrims at Bodh Gaya.

**Chandragupta II 'Vikramaditya' : 380-414 AD**

- According to 'Devi Chandragupta' (Vishakhadatta), Samudragupta was succeeded by *Ramgupta*. It seems Ramgupta ruled for a very short period. He was 'the only Gupta ruler to issue copper coins'.
- Ramagupta, a coward and impotent king, agreed to surrender his queen *Dhruvadevi* to Saka invader. But the prince Chandragupta II, the younger brother of the king, resolved to go to the enemy's camp in the guise of the queen with a view to kill the hated enemy. Chandragupta II succeeded in killing the Saka ruler.
- Chandragupta II also succeeded in killing Ramgupta, and not only seized his kingdom but also married his widow Dhruvadevi.
- Chandragupta II extended the limits of empire by matrimonial alliances (with the Nagas and Vakatakas) and conquests (Western India). He married *Kubernaga* of Naga dynasty and married his daughter *Prabhavatigupta* with Vakataka prince *Rudrasena II*.



- As a result of the overthrow of Saka rule in Western India, the Gupta empire extended upto Arabian sea. He issued silver coins in the memory of victory over Sakas. He was 'the first Gupta ruler to issue silver coins' and adopted the titles *Sakari* and *Vikramaditya*. *Ujjain* seems to have been made the second capital by Chandragupta II.
- *Mehrauli* (near Kutub Minar, Delhi) Iron Pillar inscription says that the king defeated the confederacy of Vangas and Vahilkas (Bulkh).
- **Navaratna (i.e. nine gems) of Chandragupta II :** 1. *Kalidasa* (Poetry—Ritusamhar, Meghadutam, Kumarsambhavam, Raghuvamshama; Dramas—Malvikagnimitra, Vikramorvashtyam, Abhijnan-Shakuntalam) 2. *Amarsinh* (Amarsinhkosha) 3. *Dhanavantri* (Navanitakam—medicine text) 4. *Varahmihira* (Panch Sidhantaka, Vrihatsamhita, Vrihat Jataka, Laghu Jataka) 5. *Vararuchi* (Vartika—a comment on Ashtadhyayi) 6. *Ghatakarna* 7. *Kshapranak* 8. *Velabhata* 9. *Shanku*.
- It was in Chandragupta's time that the Chinese pilgrim *Fahien* visited India.
- **Titles :** *Devagupta/Devaraja/Devashri, Parama Bhagavata, Narendra Chandra, Sinh Vikram* etc.
- **Original types of Gold coins (Dinaras) :** Ashvarohi type, Chhatradhari type, Chakra-Vikram type etc.

#### **Kumaragupta I : 415-455 AD**

- Chandragupta II was succeeded by his son Kumaragupta I.
- Towards the end of his reign, the Gupta empire was threatened from the North by the *Huns*, who were temporarily checked by his son Skandagupta.
- Kumaragupta was the worshipper of god *Kartikeya*.
- He founded the *Nalanda Mahavihara* which developed into a great centre of learning.
- **Titles :** *Mahendraditya, Mahendra Sinh* and *Ashvamedha Mahendrah* (coins) etc.
- **Original types of Gold Coins (Dinars) :** Khadgadhari type, Gajarohi type, Gajarohi Sinh-nihanta type, Khang-nihanta i.e. rhinoceros-slayer type, Kartikeya type, Apratigh-mudra type etc.

#### **Skandagupta : 455-467 AD**

- Skandagupta, the last great ruler of the Gupta dynasty.
- During his reign the Gupta empire was invaded by the *Huns*. He succeeded in defeating the *Huns*. Success in repelling the *Huns* seems to have been celebrated by the assumption of the title 'Vikramaditya' (Bhitari Pillar Inscription).
- The continuous attacks of the *Huns* weakened the empire and adversely affected its economy. The gold coinage of Skandagupta bears testimony to this.
- The decline of the empire began soon after his death.



- **Titles :** *Vikramaditya* and *Kramaditya* (coins), *Param Bhagavat* (coins), *Sharkropama* (Kahaum Pillar Inscription), *Devaraja* (Arya Manjushri Mula Kalpa) etc.

**The Huns : 500-530 AD**—Huns were primitive pastoralists owing herds of cattle and horses but knowing nothing of agriculture. They roamed in the Steppe in search of pasture and water. From the Oxus, the white Huns came into Afghanistan, destroyed the local power and, after establishing themselves there, began to pour into India in 458 AD. However, Skandagupta who was at the time ruling in Northern India, checkmated them effectively. Whenever the Gupta empire's resistance collapsed the Huns occupied the areas up to Central India and Malwa about 500 AD. There were two powerful Hun rulers *Toramana* and his son *Mihirkula*. They ruled during 500-530 AD. Mihirkula, a Shaivite, was a persecutor of Buddhism. In 530 AD, the Huns were uprooted by Yashodarmans of Mandsaur.

**Vakatakas : 3rd Century-5th Century AD**—The Vakatakas were the most important power that held sway over parts of Deccan and Central India after the fall of the Satavahanas and before the rise of Chalukyas. The founder of the Vakataka dynasty was *Vindhyasakti* (255-75 AD). Vindhyasakti was succeeded by his son *Pravarasena I* (275-335 AD), who was the real founder of the Vakataka empire. He performed 4 *Ashvamedha Yajnas*. After his death, the empire was divided. *Rudrasena I* took over the reigns of main branch i.e. Northern branch. He was the contemporary of Samudragupta. Rudrasena I was succeeded by *Prithvisen I*. He was contemporary of Chandragupta II. Chandragupta married his daughter Prabhavatigupta to the prince Rudrasena II. Prithvisen I was succeeded by his son *Rudrasena II*. Rudrasena II died after a short reign of five years, leaving behind two minor sons—*Divakarasena* and *Damodarsena*. Prabhavatigupta ruled as a regent of her son. Later, Damodarsena, became ruler, with the name *Pravarasena II*. Pravarasena II composed 'Setubandh/Ravanaho' (Poetry) in Marathi Script.

### Gupta Inscriptions

Rulers	Inscriptions	Their Character
Samudragupta	Prayaga/Allahabad Stone Pillar	Prasasti
	Eran Stone Pillar	Prasasti
	Nalanda Copper Plate	Royal Charter
Chandragupta II	Mehrauli Iron Pillar	Prasasti
Skandagupta	Junagarh Rock	Prasasti
	Bhitari Pillar	Prasasti
	Indore Stone Pillar	Royal Charter (Evidence of sub-infeudation)
Buddhagupta	Paharpur Copper Plate	Royal Charter (Evidence of state ownership of land)



### Administration

- Centralised control was not as fully realized under Guptas as it had been under the Mauryas.
- Gupta administration was, thus, highly decentralised, and as patrimonial bureaucracy reached its logical conclusion. In hereditary grants it reflected the quasi-feudal character of the economy.
- It comprised a network of self governing tribes and tributary kingdoms and their chiefs often served as representatives of imperial powers.
- The Gupta king took exalted titles like the Mahadhiraja, Samrat, Ekadhiraja, Chakravartin, befitting their large empire and imperial status.
- The practice of appointing the crown prince (*Kumara*) came in vogue.
- The Gupta kings were assisted by a council of ministers (*Mantriparishad/Mantrimandalam*). The existence of such a council is implied in the Prayaga/Allahabad Pillar Inscription, which speaks of the delight of the 'Sabhyas' (members) at the selection of Samudragupta for the throne.
- Among the high officers we may take special notice of the *Kumaramatya* and the *Sandhivigrahika*, who are not known to inscriptions of earlier period.
- The *Kumaramatyas* formed the chief cadre for recruiting high officials under the Guptas. It was from them the Mantris, Senapati, Mahadandanayaka (Minister of Justice) and Sandhivigrahika (Minister of peace and war) were generally chosen.
- The office of *Sandhivigrahika* first appears under Samudragupta, whose amatya *Harisena* held this title.
- Other Important officials : *Mahapratihari* (the Chief usher of the Royal Palace), *Dandapashika* (Chief officer of Police Department), *Vinayasthithapak* (Chief Officer of Religious affairs), *Mahapilupati* (Chief of Elephant corps), *Mahashvapati* (Chief of Cavalry) etc.

### Administrative Unit

### Head

- |                              |                    |
|------------------------------|--------------------|
| Bhukti/Bhoga (i.e. Province) | Uparika/Bhogapati  |
| Vishaya (i.e. District)      | Vishayapati/Ayukta |
| Vithika/Nagar (i.e. City)    | Nagarpati/Purapala |
| Gram (i.e. village)          | Gramika            |
- The important *Bhuktis* (i.e. provinces) of Gupta period were : Magadha, Bardhaman, Pundra Vardhana, Teerbhukti (Northern Bihar), Eastern Malwa, Western Malwa and Saurashtra.
  - The administration of city was in the hand of a council (*Paura*), which consisted of the president of the city corporation, the chief representative of the guild of merchants, a representative of the artisans and the Chief Accountant.
  - Whereas under the Mauryas, the city committee was appointed by the Maurya government, under the Guptas, it was comprised of the local representatives.



- Decentralisation of the administrative authority began during the Gupta period.
- It was during the Gupta rule that the village headmen became more important than before.
- The Gupta military organisation was feudal by character (though the emperor had a large standing army).
- In the Gupta period for the first time civil and criminal law were clearly defined and demarcated.
- Gupta kings depended primarily on land revenue, varying from 1/4 to 1/6 of the produce.
- In Gupta period the army was to be fed by the people whenever it passed through the countryside. This tax was called *Senabhakta*.
- The villagers were also subjected to forced labour called *vishti* for serving royal army and officials.
- The Gupta period also experienced an excess of land grants. (*Agarhara* grants, *Devagrahara* grants). Land grants included the transfer of royal rights over salt and mines, which were under the royal monopoly during the Maurya period.

### Society

- The varna system begins to get modified owing to the proliferation of castes. This was chiefly due to three factors : (i) A large number of foreigners had been assimilated into the Indian society primarily and were known as *Kshatriyas* (ii) There was a large absorption of tribal people into Brahmanical society through land grants. The acculturated tribes were absorbed into the *Shudra Varna*. (iii) Guilds of craftsmen were often transformed into castes as a result of the decline of trade and urban centres and the localised character of crafts.
- The social positions of *the Shudras* seems to have improved in this period. They were permitted to listen to the epics and *Puranas* and also worship a new god called Krishna.
- From around the 3rd century onwards the practice of untouchability appears to have intensified and their number registered a rise. *Katyayana*, a smriti writer of the Gupta periods, was the first to use the expression *asprasya* to denote the untouchable.
- The position of women deteriorated further. Polygamy was common.
- Early marriages were advocated and often pre-puberty marriages took place.
- The first example of *Sati* appears in Gupta time in 510 AD in Eran in Madhya Pradesh. (*Bhanugupta's Eran Inscription* ~ 510 AD)
- Women were denied any right to property except for *Stridhana* in the form of jewellery and garments.
- Under the patronage of Gupta ruler, Vaishnavism became very popular.



- The gods were activated by their unions with the respective consorts. Thus, Laxmi got her association with Vishnu and Parvati got her association with Shiva.
- This was the period of evolution of Vajrayanism and Buddhist tantric cults.
- Idol worship became a common feature of Hinduism from Gupta period onwards.

### Economy

- It is argued by many scholars that the state was the exclusive owner of land. The most decisive argument in favour of the exclusive state ownership of land is in the *Pahadpur Copper Plate inscription* of Buddhagupta.
  - Bhaga** King's customary share of the produce normally amounting to 1/6th of the produce, paid by all cultivators.
- From the economic stand point, we may classify land under the Gupta period into 5 groups :
  - Bhoga** Periodic supplies of fruits, firewood, flowers etc., which the villagers had to furnish to king.
  - 1. *Kshetra Bhoomi*—Cultivable land
  - 2. *Khila*—Waste land
  - 3. *Vastu Bhoomi*—Habitable land
  - 4. *Charagah Bhoomi*—Pasture land
  - 5. *Aprahata Bhoomi*—Forest land.
  - Bali** Originally it was a voluntary offering by the people to the king, but later it became compulsory. During the Gupta period, it seems to be an additional and oppressive tax.
- In the Gupta period land survey is evident from the *Poona plates of Prabhavati Gupta* and many other inscriptions.
  - Uparikara** An extra tax levied on all subjects.
- An officer named *Pustapala* maintained records of all land transactions in the district.
- The Guptas issued the largest number of gold coins in ancient India, but in gold content, Gupta coins are not as pure as Kushanas.
- The Guptas also issued good number of silver coins for local exchange.
- The Gupta copper coins are very few as compared to those of Kushanas, which show that use of money did not touch common people.
- Gupta period witnessed decline in long distance trade.
- Trade with the Roman Empire declined after 3rd century AD.
- Indian merchants began to rely more heavily on the South-East Asian trade.
- The ports of the East coast—*Tamralipti*, *Ghantashala* and *Kandura*—handled the North-Indian trade with South-East Asia; and those of the West coast—*Bharoach*, *Chaul*, *Kalyan* and *Cambay*—traded with the Mediterranean and West Asia.



## Culture

- The architecture of the Gupta period may be divided into three categories :
  1. **Rock-cut caves** : *Ajanta* and *Ellora* Group (Maharashtra) and *Bagh* (MP).
  2. **Structural Temples** : *Dasavatara temple* of Deogarh (Jhansi district, UP)—the oldest and the best, *Siva temple* of Bhumra (Nagod, MP), *Vishnu* and *Kankali temple* (Tigawa, MP), *Parvati temple* of Nanchana-Kuthwa (Panna district, MP), *Shiva temple* of Khoh (Satna, Panna, MP), *Krishna brick temple* of Bhittargaon (Kanpur, UP), *Laxman temple* of Sirpur (Raipur, MP), *Vishnu temple* and *Varah temple* of Eran (MP).
  3. **Stupas** : *Mirpur khas* (Sindh), *Dhammekh* (Saranath) and *Ratnagiri* (Orissa).
- The art of architecture attained great heights. By evolving the *Nagara Style* (*Shikhar style*), the Gupta art ushers in the history of Indian architecture. Shikhara Shrine, a Vaishnava symbol, one of the most characteristic features of temple architecture, found its fullest development during this period. The temple architecture, with its *garbha griha* (shrine room) in which the image of the god was placed, began with the Guptas.
- The fragmentary remains of *Dasavatara temple of Deogarh* is the example of the most ornate and beautifully composed Gupta temple building.
- The centres of the Gandhar sculptures declined and their places were taken by *Benaras*, *Patliputra* and *Mathura*.
- For the first time we get images of *Vishnu*, *Shiva* and other Gods.
- Among the best specimen of the images of Buddha is a *seated Buddha image of Sarnath*, which depicts the Buddha preaching the Dhamma.
- Of the Brahmanical images perhaps the most impressive was *the Great Boar (Varah)* carved in relief at the entrance of a cave at Udayagiri.
- The painting of this period are found in *Bagh* (Dhar district, MP), and *Ajanta* (Aurangabad district, Maharashtra). The frescoes of the Ajanta caves are the masterpieces of the paintings of this age.

## Religious Literature

**A. Hindu Texts** : Some of the old religious books (viz. *Vayu Purana*, *Vishnu Purana*, *Matsya Purana*, *Ramayan* and *Mahabharata*, *Manu Smriti*) were re-written. *Narada Smriti*, *Parashara Smriti*, *Bhrihaspati Smriti* and *Katyayana Smriti* were written in this period.

**B. Buddhist Texts** : Abhidharma Kosha (*Dignaga*), *Vishudhimagga* (*Buddhghosa*)

**C. Jain texts** : *Nyayavartam* (*Sidhsena*)

## Secular Literature

*Ritusamhar* (first poetry), *Meghadutam*, *Kumarasam-bhavam*, *Raghuvamsam*; *Malavikagnimitra* (first drama), *Vikramorvashi-yam*, *Abhijnana-Shakun-talam* (*Kalidasa*), *Mudrarakshasa* (*Visakhadatta*), *Kiratarjuniya* (*Bharavi*), *Kavyadarsa*, *Dasa Kumar Charita* (*Dandin*), *Mrichchhakatika* (*Sudraka*), *Panchatantra* (*Vishnu Sharma*), *Kamasutra* (*Vatsyayan*).



### Scientific Literature

Aryabhatiya, Surya Sidhant (*Aryabhatta*); Brahmasidhanta (*Brahmagupta*); Pancha Sidhantaka, Vrihat Samhita, Vrihat Jataka, Laghu Jataka (*Varahamihira*); Ashtanga Hridaya (medicine) (*Vagbhata*); Navanitakam (*Dhanvantri*); Mahabhaskarya, Laghubhaskarya (*Bhaskara*); Hastyayurveda (*Palkapya*)

- Note :**
1. 'Manusmriti' was translated in English under the title of 'Institutes of Hindoo Law' by *William Jones*.
  2. 'Abhijnana Shakuntalam (i.e. recognition of Shakuntala) was translated in English by *William Jones*.
  3. *Kalidas* is known as 'the Shakespeare of India'.
  4. 'Mrichchakatika' (i.e. the clay cart), love story of a poor brahman *Charudatta* and virtuos courtesan *Vasantasena*, is notable for its realistic depiction of city life.
  5. 'Kamsutra' is the earliest book on sex.
  6. 'Brahmasidhanta' was translated in Arabic under the title of 'Sind Hind'.

### Gupta Period : Golden Age of Ancient India—Reality or Myth ?

#### Arguments :

**For :** 1. There were political units; foreign rule was completely removed and peace and prosperity prevailed 2. Enlightened character of government, i.e. taxes were light, punishment mild, etc. 3. Revival of Hinduism but there was tolerance of all other religions 4. Use of Sanskrit developed and art and literature flourished during the period 5. Great personage like Kalidasa, Amarsinha, Dhanavantri, Aryabhatta, Varahamihira etc. lived during this period.

**Against :** 1. Existence of too many feudatories 2. Absence of large Central army and Bureaucracy 3. Development of Feudal elements (Increasing land grants, Serfdom, Sub-infeudation etc.) 4. Decline of trade and Guilds 5. Decline of urban centres 6. Increasing Varna distinction and social disorder 7. Decline in status of women.

### 7. Post-Gupta Period/Vardhana Dynasty (550 AD-647 AD)

#### Pushyabhuti/Vardhana Dynasty

- The Pushyabhuti or Vardhana dynasty was founded at *Thaneswar* (Karnal district, Haryana) by *Pushyabhuti* probably towards the beginning of the 6th century. Pushyabhuti were the feudatories of the Guptas, but has assumed independence after the Hun invasions.
- The first important ruler of the dynasty was *Prabhakaravardhana* (580-605 AD).
- Prabhakaravardhana was succeeded by his eldest son *Rajyavardhana* (605-606 AD).
- Rajyavardhana had to face problems from the day of his succession to the throne. *Grahavarman*, the Maukhari ruler of Kannauj and husband



of *Rajyashri* (sister of Rajyavardhana) was murdered by *Deva Gupta* (the ruler of Malwa) who in alliance with *Shashanka* (ruler of Gaud or North-Western Bengal) now occupied Kannauj and imprisoned Rajyashri.

- Rajyavardhana, therefore, undertook a campaign against Deva Gupta and killed him but he was killed by Shashanka in 606 AD. In the meanwhile Rajyashri escaped into the forests of Central India.

#### **Harshavardhana : 606-647 AD**

- After the killing of Rajavardhana, his younger brother, Harshavardhana also known as *Siladitya*, ascended the Pushyabhuti throne in 606 AD and from this year started the *Harsha Era*.
- After ascending the throne Harsha first rescued his widowed sister Rajyashri, from the Vindhyan forest, where she was going to throw herself into the fire.
- Harsha drove out Shashanka from Kannauj who had occupied it after killing of Rayavardhana. He not only unified *Kannauj* with Thanesar but also made it his new capital, which made him the most powerful king of North India.
- Harsha thereafter, proceeded towards the east against *Shashanka* with a view to avenge the death of his brother, Rajyavardhana and brother-in-law, Grahavarman. Harsha was not successful in his first expedition against Gaud, but in his second expedition towards the close of his reign, after the death of Shashanka (died in 637 AD), he conquered Magadha and Shashanka's empire.
- Harshavardhana defeated *Dhruvasena II*, the Maitraka ruler of Vallabhi. However, Harsha, in order to secure the safety of the western boundary, reinstated him and gave his daughter in marriage to Dhruvasena II. Dhruvasena II accepted the position of a feudatory vassal. It was an important diplomatic achievement of Harsha.
- The course of Harsha's conquests suffered a serious setback on his expedition towards the Deccan. *Pulkeshin II* of Chalukya dynasty of Vatapi/Vadami inflicted a decisive defeat on him at the bank of Narmada. It was the only defeat of Harsha's victorious life. The Chalukya records describe Harsha as the lord of whole of Northern country (*Sakalottarapatheshvara*).
- The area under his control covered many parts of Northern India, Eastern Rajasthan and the Ganges Valley as far as Assam. His empire included territories of distant feudal kings too.
- Harsha maintained diplomatic relations with China. In 641 AD, he sent an envoy to Tai-Tsung, the Tang Emperor of China. Three Chinese missions subsequently visited his court. *Hiuen-Tsang*, the celebrated Chinese pilgrim, visited India during Harsha's reign. He spent about eight years (635-643 AD) in the dominions of Harsha.
- Hiuen-Tsang mentions two most celebrated events of Harsha's reign the assemblies at Kannauj and at Prayaga. The *Kannauj assembly* (643 AD)



was held in the honour of Hiuen-Tsang and to popularise Mahayana sect of Buddhism. The *Prayaga assembly* was held in 643-644 AD. In *Prayaga* Harshavardhana used to celebrate religious festivals at the end of every five years, at the confluence of the Ganges, the Yamuna and the Saraswati. It is said that this was the beginning of *Kumbha fair*.

- Harshavardhana was a Shaiva by faith, but he showed equal respect to other sects. Hiuen-Tsang portrays him as a liberal Buddhist (Mahayana) who also honoured gods of others sects.
- According to Hiuen-Tsang, *Nalanda University*, meant for Buddhist monks, was maintained by the revenue from 200 villages which granted by Harshavardhana.
- He died in 647 AD. Harsha does not appear to have any heir to his throne, which was usurped after his death by his minister named Arunashva.
- Harshavardhana was not only a patron of learning, but was himself an accomplished author. He wrote three Sanskrit plays—*Nagananda*, *Ratnavali* and *Priyadarsika*. He gathered around him a circle of learned men, of whom *Banabhatta*, the author of *Harshacharita* (an important historical work narrating the incidents of the earlier part of Harsha's reign) and *Kadambari* (a poetical novel of great literary merit) and *Bhartrihari*, the author of *Niti Shataka*, *Shringar Shataka* and *Vairagya Shatak* (jointly called *Shatakatrayi*) are the well known.
- Harsha governed his empire on the same lines as the Guptas did, except that this administration had become more feudal and decentralised.

### States of the Deccan and South India

#### Chalukyas of Vatapi/Vadami : 543-755 AD

- The Vakataka power was followed by Chalukyas.
- Chalukyas established their capital at Vatapi/Badami in the district of Bijapur in Karnataka.
- *Pulakesin II* (609-42 AD) was able to check Harsha's design to conquer Deccan.
- *Aihole inscription* is an eulogy written by his court poet *Ravikirti*.
- He sent an ambassador to the Persian King Khusrau II in 625 AD and also received one from him.
- The Chinese pilgrim *Hiuen-Tsang* visited his kingdom.
- Pallava ruler *Narsimhavarman 'Mammala'* invaded the Chalukya kingdom, killed Pulakesin II and captured Vatapi. He adopted the title *Vatapikondai* i.e. the conqueror of Vatapi.
- In 757 AD, Chalukyas were overthrown by their feudatories, the Rashtrakutas.

#### Vesara Style/Deccan Style

- Chalukyas began the Vesara style or Deccan style in building structural temples, which however, reached culmination, only under the Rashtrakutas and the Hoyasalas.



- **Specimens of Chalukyan Temples** : 1. Vesar style—*Jinendra temple*/ *Meguti temple*—Aihole (Ravikirti); *Vishnu temple*—Aihole, *Ladh Khan temple* (attributed to god Surya)—Aihole, *Durga temple*—Aihole; Aihole is called a 'town of temples' because it contains about 70 temples. 2. Nagara style : *Papanatha temple*—Pattadakal 3. Dravida style : *Virupaksha temple* and *Sangamesvara temple*—Pattadakal.

#### **Pallavas of Kanchi : 575-897 AD**

- There is controversy regarding the origin of Pallavas. Possibly the Pallavas were a local tribe who established their authority in the Tondaimandalam or the land of creepers.
- They were orthodox Brahmanical Hindus and their capital was Kanchi.
- Both Chalukyas and Pallavas tried to establish their supremacy over land between Krishna and Tungabhadra.
- Pallava king *Narsimhavarman* (630-668 AD) occupied Chalukyan capital Vatapi in about 642 AD and assumed the title *Vatapikonda* i.e. conqueror of Vatapi.
- Pallavas were instrumental in spreading Indian culture in South-East Asia. Till the 8th century AD Pallava influence was predominant in Cambodia. The Pallava type of Shikhara is to be found in the temples of Java, Cambodia and Annam.

#### **Pallava Art**

- Pallavas began the Dravida style of temple architecture, which reached culmination under the rule of Cholas.
- The development of temple architecture, particularly Dravida style, under the Pallavas can be seen in four stages :

<b>Mahendravarmana Group</b>	Mahendravarmana I (600-630 AD)	Temple at Bhairavkona (North Arcot Distt.), Ananteswar temple at Undavalli (Guntur Distt.)
<b>Mammala Group</b>	Narsimhavarmana I 'Mammala' (630-668 AD)	Mandapa temples and Ratha temples (Sapt Pagodas) at Mammalapuram (Mahabalipuram)
<b>Rajasimha Group</b>	Narsimhavarmana II 'Rajsimha' (680-720 AD)	Kailashnatha and Vaikunth Perumal Temple at Kanchi, Shore temple at Mammalapuram
<b>Aparajit Group</b>	Nandivarmana 'Aparajit' (879-897 AD)	Mukteshwar and Matangeshwar temple at Kanchi, Parshurameswar temple at Gudimallam

- The Pallavas also contributed to the development of sculpture in South India. The Pallava sculpture is indebted largely to the Buddhist tradition. It is more monumental and linear in form, thus avoiding the typical ornamentation of the Deccan sculpture. The best example is the Descent of the Ganges or Arjuna's Penance at Mammalapuram.



### Gupta 'n' Post-Gupta Dynasties and Their Founders

Dynasty	Founder
The Chalukyas of Vatapi	Jayasimha
The Gangas of Talakad	Konakanivarma
The Guptas of Magadha	Shri Gupta
The Kadambas of Vanavasi	Mayurasharma
The Kingdom of Gaud	Shashanka
The Kingdom of Thaneshwar	Pushyabhuti
The Later-Guptas of Magadha-Malwa	Krishnagupta
The Maitrakas of Vallabhi	Bhattarka
The Maukharis of Kannauj	Yajnavarman
The Pallavas of Kanchi	Simhavarman
The Pandyas of Madurai	Kodungon
The Vakatakas	Vindhyaashakti

## MEDIEVAL INDIA

### 8. Early-Medieval Period (650-1206)

#### I. North India (Rajputa Period)

After Harshavardhana, the Rajputas emerged as a powerful force in Northern India and dominated the Indian political scene for nearly 500 years from the 7th century.

10 Important Rajputa Kingdoms	Period	Capital	Founder
Chauhan/Chahaman of Delhi-Ajmer	7th Cen.-1192	Delhi	Vasudeva
Pratihara/Parihar of Kannauj	730-1036	Avanti, Kannauj	Nagabhata I
Pawar/Parmar of Malwa	790-1150	Ujjain, Dhar	Seeak II 'Sri Harsha'
Chaulukya/Solanki of Kathiyawar	942-1187	Anihavada	Mularaja I
Rastrakuta of Malkhand	752-973	Malkhand/Manyakheta	Dantidurga (Danti Varman II)
Chandela of Jejakabhukti.	831-1202	Khajuraho, Mahoba, Kalinjar	Nannuk Chandela
Kalchuri/Haihaya of Chedi.	850-1211	Tripuri	Kokkala I
Gadhawal/Rathor of Kannauj	1090-1194	Kannauj	Chandradeva
Tomar of Surrounding areas of Haryana and Delhi	—	Dhillika	—
Guhilota/Sisodiya of Mewar	8th Cen.-1930	Chittor	Bappa Rawal, Hammir I



### Tripartite Struggle

- Towards the close of the 8th century AD, there were three great power in India-the *Palas* in the East, the *Gurjar-Pratihara* in the North and the *Rashtrakutas* in the Deccan.
- The tripartite struggle for the supremacy among the Palas, Pratiharas and the Rashtrakutas was the important event of these centuries.
- The main cause for this struggle was the desire to possess the city of Kannauj (Farrukhabad Distt., UP) Which was then a symbol of sovereignty.

#### The Palas : 750-1150

**Capital : Muddagiri/Munger (Bihar)**

- *Gopala* founded the Pala empire in 750 AD.
- His son *Dharmapala* (770-810) succeeded him. Dharmapala revived *Nalanda University*.
- He founded the *Vikramshila University*.
- The Pala dynasty was succeeded by *Sena dynasty* of Bengal. *Jayadeva* ('Gita Gobinda') was the great court poet of *Luxman Sen*.

#### The Pratiharas : 730-1036

- The Pratiharas are also called Gurjara-Pratiharas probably because they originated from Gujarat or South-West Rajasthan.
- *Bhoja/Mihir Bhoja* (836-882) was the greatest ruler of of this dynasty.
- He was a devotee of Vishnu and adopted the title of '*Adivaraha*'.

#### The Rashtrakutas : 752-973

- *Dantidurga* (752-756), who fixed his capital at *Malkhand/Malkhed* (Gulbarga distt., Karnataka), founded the Kingdom.
- The greatest Rashtrakuta rulers were *Govinda III* (793-814) and *Amoghvarsha* (814-878). Amoghvarsha ruled for 64 years but by temperament he preferred pursuit of religion and literature to war. He was himself an author and wrote *Kavirajamarga*, the earliest Kannada book on Poetics.
- The famous rock-cut *temple of Kailash (Shiva) at Ellora* was built by one of the Rashtrakuta kings *Krishna I*.

#### Other Important Rulers

- **Prithviraj Chauhan (1178-92)** : He ruled over Delhi and Agra and fought two important battles, viz. *First Battle of Tarain* was fought in 1191 between the forces of Prithviraj Chauhan and Mohammad Ghoris in which the latter was defeated. *Second Battle of Tarain* was fought in 1192 when Mohammad Ghoris again invaded India in which Prithviraj Chauhan was defeated and captured and later on slain. The Kingdom of Delhi fell to Mohammad Ghoris.

The Battle of Tarain had great significance in the political scene as it led to the establishment of Muslim rule over North India and, subsequently, in the South for several centuries.

- **Jai Chand Gadhawal/Rathor (1169-94)** : He was the last Rajputa King who was also defeated and killed by Mohammad Ghoris in the *Battle of Chandawar* (1194).



- **Rana Kumbha, the Sisodiya ruler of Mewar (1433-68)** : Rana Kumbha was the famous ruler of Mewar. He defeated Mohammad Khilji and erected the Tower of victory (*Vijay Stambha*) in *Chittor*. His successors *Rana Sangram Singh (Rana Sanga)* and *Rana Pratap* were also great kings of Mewar state.
- **Salient features of the Rajputa Kingdoms** : The country remained free of invasions but lost foreign contact. The caste system was rigid. The Rajputas were proud, warrior and people but hospitable. In the field of culture many great fortresses and temples were built by them such as *Khajuraho* (MP), *Lingaraja temple* (Bhubaneswar, Orissa), *Sun temple* (Konarka, Orissa), the *Jagannath temple* (Puri), *Dilwara temple* (Mount Abu).
- **Causes of the Decline of Rajputas** : Lack of unity and foresightedness, caste the system, and defective military organization were some of the causes for the downfall of the Rajputas.

## II. South India (Cholas and Others)

### The Chola Empire : 850-1279AD

**Capital : Tanjore, Gangaikondacholapuram**

- The founder of the Chola dynasty was *Vijayalaya*, who was at first a feudatory of the Pallavas. He captured Tanjore in 850 AD.
- The greatest Chola rulers were *Rajaraja* (985-1014AD) and his son *Rajendra I* (1014-1044AD).
- *Rajaraja* built *Vrihadeshwar/Rajarajeshwar* temple (attributed to Shiva) at Tanjore.
- *Rajendra I* conquered Orissa, Bengal, Burma and Andaman and Nicobar islands. The Chola dynasty was at its zenith during his reign.
- *Rajendra I* assumed the title of Gangaikondachola and built a city called Gangaikondacholapuram.
- The last ruler of Chola dynasty was *Rajendra III*.
- The king was the head of central authority helped by a council of ministers, but the administration was democratic.
- The Chola empire was divided into *Mandalams* (Province) and these in turn were divided into *Valanadu* (Commissionary), *Nadu* (District) and *Kurram* (a group of villages).
- The arrangement of local self-government is regarded as the basic feature of the administration of Cholas.
- Land revenue and trade tax were the main sources of income.
- The style of architecture which came into vogue during this period is called Dravida e.g. *Kailashnath temple* of *Kanchipuram*.
- Another aspect was image-making which reached its climax in dancing figure of Shiva called *Nataraja*.
- *Kambana* who wrote *Ramavataram* was one of the greatest figures of Tamil poetry. His *Ramayana* is also known as *Kamba Ramayana*.
- *Kambana*, *Kuttana* and *Pugalendi* are considered as 'three gems of Tamil poetry'.



- In the temples, the *Vimana* or the tall pyramidal tower dominates the whole structure of the shrine and imparts an extraordinary dignity to it.
- *Gopuram* and *Garbhagriha* are the other two important structures.
- The best specimens are the temples of Vijayalaya, Choleshwara, the Nageshwara temple, the Koranganath temple and the Muvarakovitha temple.

### Other Kingdoms of South

Kingdom	Capital	Real Founder
Western/Later Chalukyas (973-1200)	Kalyani, Karnataka	Tailapa II
Kakatiyas (1110-1326)	Warangal, Andhra Pradesh	Prolaraja II
Yadavas (1187-1312)	Devagiri, Maharashtra	Bhillama V
Hoyasalas (1173-1342)	Dwarasamudra, Karnataka	Vittigadeva 'Vishnuvardhana'

**Note :** *The temple of Hoyasaleshwara at Dwarasamudra (Modern Halebidu) is the greatest achievement of Hoyasala art.*

## 9. Sultanate Period (1206-1526AD)

### I. The Delhi Sultanate

#### The Background of Delhi Sultanate

- **First Muslim Invasion-Mohammad Bin Qasim's Invasion (712AD) :** Mohammad Bin Qasim invaded India in 712 AD and conquered Sindh which became the province of Omayyad Khilafat.
- **First Turk Invasion-Mahmud Ghaznavi's Invasion (998-1030 AD) :** Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni led about 17 expeditions to India to enrich himself by taking away the wealth from India. In 1025 he attacked and raided the most celebrated Hindu temple of Somnath that lies on the coast in the extreme south of Kathiwar. The temple was destroyed in 1026 AD.
- **Second Turk Invasion-Mohammad Ghori's Invasion (1175-1206 AD) :** Mohammad Ghori invaded India and laid the foundation of the Muslim dominion in India. He may be considered the 'founder of muslim rule' in India.
- **Reasons for the Success of Turks in India :** (i) Rajputas lacked unity and organisation and were divided by rivalries (ii) There was no central government (iii) The Rajput Kingdoms were small and scattered (iv) The Turks were better organised and took advantage of the lack of mutual co-operation among the Rajputas.

#### The Delhi Sultanate : 1206-1526 AD

- Mohammed Ghori's conquests became the nucleus of a new political entity in India-the Delhi Sultanate. This period can be divided into 5 distinct periods viz. (i) The Slave Dynasty (1206-90) (ii) The Khilji Dynasty (1290-1320) (iii) The Tughlaq Dynasty (1320-1414) (iv) The Sayyid Dynasty (1414-51) (v) The Lodhi Dynasty (1451-1526).



**The Slave Dynasty : 1206-90 AD****Qutubuddin Aibak : 1206-10**

- A Turkish slave by origin, he was purchased by Mohammad Ghori who later made him his Governor. After the death of Ghori, Aibak became the master of Hindustan and founded the Slave Dynasty in 1206. For his generosity, he was given the title of *Lakh Bakhsh* (giver of Lakhs).
- He died in 1210 while playing *Chaugan* or Polo.
- He constructed two mosques-*Quwat-ul-Islam* at Delhi and *Adhai din ka Jhonpra* at Ajmer. He also began the construction of *Qutub Minar*, in the honour of famous Sufi Saint *Khwaja Qutubuddin Bakhtiyar Kaki*.
- Aibak was a great patron of learning and patronised writers like *Hasan-un-Nizami*, author of 'Taj-ul-Massir' and *Fakhruddin*, author of 'Tarikh-i-Mubarak Shahi'.

**Shamsuddin Iltutmish : 1211-36**

- He was a slave of Qutubuddin Aibak and occupied the throne of Delhi in 1211 after deposing *Aram Bakhsh*.
- He was a very capable ruler and is regarded as the 'real founder of the Delhi Sultanate'. He made *Delhi* the capital in place of Lahore.
- He saved Delhi Sultanate from the wrath of *Chengiz Khan*, the Mongol leader, by refusing shelter to *Khwarizm Shah*, whom Chengiz was chasing.
- He introduced the silver coin (*tanka*) and the copper coin (*jital*). He organised the *Iqta System* and introduced reforms in civil administration and army, which was now centrally paid and recruited.
- He set up an official nobility of slaves known as *Chahalgani/Chalisa* (group of 40).
- He completed the construction of *Qutub Minar* which was started by Aibak.
- He patronised *Minhaj-us-Siraj*, author of 'Tabaqat-i-Nasiri'.

**Ruknuddin : 1236**

- He was the son of Iltutmish and was crowned by her mother, *Shah Turkan*, after death of Iltutmish. He was deposed by Razia, daughter of Iltutmish when he was out of capital to curb a rebellion in Avadh against him.

**Razia Sultana : 1236-40**

- Though Iltutmish had nominated his daughter Razia as the successor, the nobles placed Ruknuddin Firoj on the throne. However, Razia got rid of Ruknuddin and ascended the throne.
- She was the 'first and only Muslim lady who ever ruled India'.
- She was popular among the people but was not acceptable to the nobles and theologians. She further offended the nobles by her preference for an Abyssian slave *Yakut*.
- Soon after her accession, the governors of Multan, Badaun, Hansi and Lahore openly revolted against her. There was a serious rebellion in Bhatinda. *Altunia*, governor of Bhatinda refused to accept suzerainty of Razia. Razia accompanied by Yakut marched against Altunia.



- However, Altunia got Yakut murdered and imprisoned Razia. Subsequently, Razia married Altunia and both of them marched towards Delhi.
- In 1240 AD, Razia became the victim of a conspiracy and was assassinated near Kaithal (Haryana).

**Bahram Shah : 1240-42**

- After Razia, Iltutmish's third son Bahram Shah was put on the throne by the powerful turkish council *Chalisa*.
- He was considered only as de jure ruler, while Naib-e-mamlakat (the regent) was the de facto ruler.
- Bahram Shah lost his life after his failed attempt to assert his authority once on the throne.

**Masud Shah : 1242-46**

- He was the son of Ruknuddin but was deposed after *Balban* and Nasiruddin Mahamud's Mother, *Malika-e-Jahan*, conspired against him and established Nasiruddin Mahamud as the new Sultan.

**Nasiruddin Mahamud : 1246-66**

- He was the son of Iltutmish and was known as the *Darvesi King* as he was very pious and noble. He died in 1266.

**Ghiyasuddin Balban : 1266-87**

- Balban ascended the throne in 1266.
- He broke the power of *Chalisa* and restored the prestige of the crown. That was his greatest contribution towards the stability of the Sultanate.
- To keep himself well-informed Balban appointed spies.
- He created a strong centralised army to deal with internal disturbances and to cheek Mongols who were posing a serious danger to Delhi Sultante.
- He established the military department *Diwan-i-Arz*.
- The Persian court model influenced Balban's conception of Kingship. He took up the title of *Zil-i-Ilahi* (Shadow of God).
- He introduced *Sijda* (prostration before the monarch) and *Paibos* (kissing the feet of monarch) as the normal forms of salutation.
- He destroyed the Mewati Rajputa brigandage in the *doab*, where forests were cut and forts built.
- In his last days he overlooked the Sultanate affairs due to the death of his eldest and most loving son, *Muhammad*, and rebellion by his closest and most loved slave, *Tughril*. Muhammad died fighting the Mongolians in 1285 while Tughril was captured and beheaded.

**Kaiqubad : 1287-90**

- A grandson of Balban was seated on the throne by *Fakruddin*, the Kotwal of Delhi who assumed high political authority during the last days of Balban. But Kaiqubad was killed by the Khiliji family, which saw the end of Slave dynasty and beginning of Khiliji dynasty at Delhi throne.



## The Khilji Dynasty : 1290-1320 AD

### Jalaluddin Khilji : 1290-96

- Jalaluddin Khilji founded the Khilji dynasty.

### Alauddin Khilji : 1296-1316

- He was a nephew and son-in-law of Jalaluddin Khilji. Alauddin Khilji killed him and succeeded the throne in 1296.
- He was the first Turkish Sultan of Delhi who separated religion from politics. He proclaimed 'Kingship knows no Kinship'.

### Alauddin's Imperialism

- Alauddin annexed Gujarat (1298), Ranthambhor (1301), Mewar (1303), Malwa (1305), Jalor (1311). In Deccan, Alauddin's army led by *Malik Kafur* defeated *Ram Chandra* (Yadava ruler of Devagiri), *Pratap Rudradeva* (Kakatiya ruler of Warangal), Vir *Ballal* III (Hoyasala ruler of Dwarsamudra) and *Vir Pandya* (Pandya ruler of Madurai).

### Administrative Reforms

- In order to avoid the problems created by the nobles, Alauddin issued 4 ordinances. *The I<sup>st</sup> ordinance* aimed at the confiscation of the religious endowments and free grants of lands. By *the II<sup>nd</sup> ordinance* Alauddin reorganised the spy system. *The III<sup>rd</sup> ordinance* prohibited the use of wine. *The IV<sup>th</sup> ordinance* issued by Alauddin laid down that nobles should not have social gathering and they should not inter-marry without his permission.
- He introduced the system of *Dagh* (the branding of horse) and *Chehra* (descriptive roll of soldiers).
- Alauddin ordered that all land was to be measured and then the share of state was to be fixed.
- The post of special officer called *Mustakharaj* was created for the purpose of collection of revenue.
- The peasants had to pay the produce as land revenue.
- Alauddin sought to fix cost of all commodities. For the purpose he set up three markets at Delhi : one market for food grains, the second for costly cloth and third for horses, slaves and cattle. Each market was under the control of a high officer called *Shahna* who maintained a register of the merchants and strictly controlled the shopkeepers and the prices. The check on market was kept by two officers- *Diwan-i-Riyasat* and *Shahna-i-Mandi*.
- All goods for sale were brought to an open market called *Sara-i-Adal*.
- Many forts were built by him and the most important of them was Alai fort. He also constructed the *Alai Darwaja*, the entrance gate of Qutub Minar. He also built the Palace of thousand Pillars called *Hazar Sutun*.
- He was a patron of art and learning. *Amir Khusrau*, the poet-musician was his favourite court poet.
- In 1316, after death of Alauddin, Malik Kafur, called *Hajardinari* seized the throne. Before Kafur died, he nominated Shihabuddin (Alauddin's 6



year old prince) as King but imprisoned the eldest prince Mubarak Khan. Kafur was killed by the loyalists of the royal family of Alauddin.

### **Mubarak Khan : 1316-20**

- After the death of Kafur, Mubarak Khan was freed from prison and worked as regent for Shihabuddin. He captured the throne at the first opportunity he got, but could rule only for a years as he sank into debauchery and could not give up his dissipated lifestyle. He awarded his lover *Mubarak Hassan* authority over army and palace guards, who soon obtained full control over Sultan's palace. Mubarak Hassan was given the title Khusrau Khan by the Sultan and within months Khusrau killed Mubarak Khan and assumed the title of Nasirudin in mid-1320.

### **Khusrau Khan : 1320**

- Khusrau Khan was killed by Ghazi Malik, governor of Dipalpur, when he tried to oppose a rebellion by Ghazi Malik and his son Fakhruddin Jauna. This brought the end of Khilji dynasty and established the Tughlaq dynasty on the throne of Delhi.

### **The Tughlaq Dynasty : 1320-1414 AD**

#### **Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq : 1320-25**

- Khusrau Khan, the last king of the Khilji dynasty was killed by Ghazi Malik. Ghazi Malik ascended the throne assuming the title Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq.
- He died in an accident and his son Jauna (Ulugh Khan) succeeded him under the title Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq.

#### **Mohammad-bin Tughlaq : 1325-51**

- Prince *Jauna*, son of Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq ascended the throne in 1325.
- He tried to introduce many administrative reforms. He had 5 ambitious projects for which he became particularly debatable.

**(i) Taxation in the Doab (1326) :** The Sultan made an ill-advised financial experiment in the Doab between the Ganges and Yamuna. He not only increased the rate of taxation but also revived and created some additional *Abwabs* or cesses. Although the share of the state remained as in time of Alauddin, it was fixed arbitrary not on the basis of actual produce. Prices were also fixed artificially for covering the produce into money. It is said that the increase was twenty fold and to this were added *Ghari* or house tax and the *Charahi* or pasture tax. The Sultan created a new department of Agriculture called *Diwan-i-Kohi*. The main object of this department was to bring more land under cultivation by giving direct help to peasants.

**(ii) Transfer of Capital (1327) :** The most controversial step which Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq undertook soon after his accession was the so-called transfer of capital from *Delhi* to *Devagiri*. Devagiri had been a base for the expansion of Turkish rule in South India. It appears that the Sultan wanted to make Devagiri second capital so that he might be able to control South India better. Devagiri was thus named *Daulatabad*.



After a couple of years Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq decided to abandon Daulatabad largely because he soon found that just as he could not control South India from Delhi, he could not control North from Daulatabad.

**(iii) Introduction of Token Currency (1329) :** Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq decided to introduce bronze coins, which were to have same value as the silver coins. Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq might have been successful if he could prevent people from forging the new coins. He was not able to do so and soon the new coins began to be greatly devalued in markets. Finally Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq decided to withdraw the token currency. He promised to exchange silver pieces for bronze coins.

**(iv) Proposed Khurasan Expedition (1329) :** The Sultan had a vision of universal conquest. He decided to conquer Khurasan and Iraq and mobilised a huge army for the purpose. He was encouraged to do so by Khurasani nobles who had taken shelter in his court. Moreover, there was instability in Khurasan on account of the unpopular rule of Abu Said. This project was also abandoned.

**(v) Qarachil Expedition (1330) :** This expedition was launched in Kumaon hills in Himalayas allegedly to counter Chinese incursions. It also appears that the expedition was directed against some refractory tribes in Kumaon-Garhwal region with the object of bringing them under Delhi Sultanate. The first attack was a success but when the rainy season set in, the invaders suffered terribly.

- His five projects led to revolts. His last days were spent in checking the revolts (altogether 36 revolts in 25 years).

1335 Mudurai became independent (Jalaluddin Ahsan Shah)

1336 Foundation of Vijayanagar (Harihar and Bukka), Warangal became independent (Kanhaiya)

1341-47 Revolts of Sada Amirs and Foundation of Bahamani in 1347 (Hasan Gangu)

- He died in *Thatta* while campaigning in Sindh against Taghi, a turkish slave.

### **Firoz Shah Tughlaq : 1351-88**

- He was a cousin of Mohammad-bin-Tughlaq. After his death the nobles and theologians of the court selected Firoz Shah as the next Sultan.
- After his accession Firoz Tughlaq was faced with the problem of preventing the imminent break up of Delhi Sultanate. He adopted the policy of trying to appease the nobility, army and theologians and of asserting his authority over only such areas, which could be easily administered from the centre. He therefore made no attempt to re-assert his authority over South India and Deccan.
- He decreed that whenever a noble died his son should be allowed to succeed to his position including his Iqta if he had no sons, his son-in-law and in his absence his slave was to succeed.
- Firoz extended the principle of heredity to the army. Soldiers were allowed to rest in peace and to send in their place their sons. The soldiers



were not paid in cash but by assignments on land revenue of villages (*Vajeha*). This novel technique of payment led to many abuses.

- Firoz tried to win over the theologians proclaiming that he was a true Muslim king and the state under him was truly Islamic. In order to keep the theologians satisfied a number of them were appointed to high offices.
- He tried to ban practices which the orthodox theologians considered as non Islamic. Thus he prohibited the practice of Muslim women going out to worship at graves of saints.
- It was during the time of Firoz that *Jizya* became a separate tax. Firoz refused to exempt the Brahmanas from payment of Jizya since this was not provided for in *Shariat*.
- The new system of taxation was according to Quran. Four kinds of taxes sanctioned by the Quran were imposed. These taxes were *Kharaj*, *Zakat*, *Jizya* and *Khams*. Kharaj was the land tax, which was equal to 1/10 of the produce of the land, Zakat was 2% tax on property, Jizya was levied on non-Muslims and Khams was 1/5 of the booty captured during war.
- In order to encourage agriculture, the Sultan paid a lot of attention to irrigation. Firoz repaired a number of canals and imposed *Haque-i-Sharb* or *Hasil-i-Sharb* (water tax).
- He was a great builder. The cities of Fatehabad, Hisar, Jaunpur and Firozabad stand to his credit.
- The two pillars of Ashoka, one from Topra (Haryana) and other from Merrut (U.P.) were brought to Delhi.
- The Sultan established at Delhi a hospital described as *Dar-ul-Shifa*.
- A new department of *Diwan-i-Khairat* was set up to make provisions for the marriage of poor girls.
- Another step which Firoz took was both economic and political in nature. He ordered his officials that whenever they attacked a place they should select handsome and well-born young boys and send them to Sultan as slaves.
- However, his rule was marked by peace and tranquility, and the credit for it goes to his Prime Minister *Khan-i-Jahan Maqbul*.
- He died in 1388.

#### After Firoz Shah Tughlaq : 1388-1414

- The Tughlaq dynasty could not survive much after Firoz Shah's death. The Malwa, Gujarat and Sharqi (Jaunpur) Kingdoms broke away from the Sultanate.
- **Timur's Invasion : 1398-99** - *Timur, the lame*, a Turkish Chief and cruel conqueror from Mangolia and descendant of Chengiz Khan, invaded India in 1398 during the reign of *Muhammad Shah Tughlaq*, the last ruler of Tughlaq dynasty. Taimur's army mercilessly sacked and plundered Delhi. Timur returned to Central Asia, leaving a nominee named Khizr Khan to rule to Punjab. In 1404 he died while on his way to conquer China.



### The Sayyid Dynasty : 1414-50 AD

- **Khizr Khan (1414-21)** : Timur's nominee captured Delhi and was proclaimed the new Sultan. He was the first of the Sayyid dynasty which ruled over Delhi and surrounding districts.
- **Mubarak Shah (1421-34)** : He succeeded Khizr at the throne after his successful expeditions against Mewatis, Katehars and the Gangetic Doab area. He was killed by the nobles in his own court.
- **Muhammad Shah (1434-43)** : The nobles put Muhammad Shah on the throne, but he could not survive the in-fighting among the nobles in the court. He was authorised to rule only a meagre area around 30 miles, and rest the of the Sultanate was ruled by nobles.
- **Alam Shah (1443-51)** : The last Sayyid king descended in favour of Bahlol Lodhi and retired. Thus began the Lodhi dynasty which was confined to Delhi and a few surrounding areas.

### The Lodhi Dynasty : 1451-1526 AD

#### Bahlol Lodhi : 1451-88

- Bahlol Lodhi was one of the Afghan Sardars. He established himself in Punjab after the invasion of Timur.
- He founded the Lodhi dynasty.

#### Sikandar Lodhi : 1489-1517

- Sikandar Lodi was the son of Bahlol Lodhi who conquered Bihar and Western Bengal.
- He shifted his capital from Delhi to **Agra**, a city founded by him.
- Sikandar was a fanatical Muslim and broke the sacred images of the Jwalamukhi Temple at Nagar Kot and ordered the temples of Mathura to be destroyed.
- He took a keen interest in the development of agriculture. He introduced the **Gaz-i-Sikandari** (Sikandar's yard) of 32 digits for measuring cultivated fields.

#### Ibrahim Lodhi : 1517-26

- He was the last king of the Lodhi dynasty and the last Sultan of Delhi.
- He was the son of Sikandar Lodhi.
- The Afghan nobility was brave and freedom-loving people but it was because of its fissiparous and individualistic tendencies that the Afghan monarchy was weakened. Moreover, Ibrahim Lodhi asserted the absolute power of the Sultan. As a result, some of the nobles turned against him.
- At last Daulat Khan Lodhi, the governor of Punjab invited Babur to overthrow Ibrahim Lodhi. Babur accepted the offer and inflicted a crushing defeat on Ibrahim Lodhi in **the first battle of Panipat** in 1526. Ibrahim Lodhi was killed in the battle Normal and with him ended the Delhi Sultanate.



### Causes of Decline of Delhi Sultanate

The main causes were : (i) Despotism and military type of government which did not have the confidence of the people (ii) Degeneration of Delhi Sultans (esp. the wild projects of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq, Incompetence of Firoz Tughlaq) (iii) War of succession as there was no fixed law for succession (iv) Greed and incompetency of the nobles (v) Defective military organisation (vi) Vastness of empire and poor means of communication (vii) Financial instability (viii) Number of slaves increased to 1,80,000 in Firoz Tughlaq's time which was a burden on the treasury (ix) Invasion of Timur.

### Mongolian Invasions During Delhi Sultanate

Regime of Sultan	Year	Events
Iltutmish	1221 AD	Chengiz Khan came up to the bank of Indus.
Masud	1241 AD	Tair Bahadur entered Punjab. Towards the end of the 1245 AD, Balban fought back the Mongolians and recovered Multan which was captured by the Mongols.
Balban	1279 AD	Prince Muhammad of Multan, Bughra Khan from Samana and Malik Mubarak of Delhi combined together to defeat the Mongols.
Balban	1286 AD	Tamar invaded India. Prince Muhammad was killed in the battle, and was decorated with the <i>Khan-i-Shahid</i> title.
Jalaluddin Khilji	1292 AD	Abdullah came to the Northern part of India. About 4,000 Mongols got converted to Islam and became the famous ' <i>New Musalman</i> '.
Alauddin Khilji	1296-99 AD	Zafar Khan defeated the Mongols at Jalandhar and Saldi, their leader was taken prisoner. Zafar Khan was killed in the battle.
Alauddin Khilji	1304 AD	Ali Beg and Tash were defeated.
Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq	1329 AD	Tarmashirin Khan was able to reach the outskirts of Delhi but was defeated by Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq.

### Administration under Delhi Sultanate

- The Turkish Sultan in India declared themselves Lieutenant of the faithful i.e. of the Abbasid caliphate of Baghdad and included his name in *Khutba*, it did not mean that the caliph became the legal ruler. The caliph had only a moral position.
- Political, legal and military authority was vested in the Sultan. He was responsible for administration and was also the commander-in-chief of the military forces.
- No clear law of succession developed among Muslim rulers. Thus military strength was the main factor in succession to the throne.



## Central Administration

## Department

Diwan-i-Wizarat (Department of Finance)
Diwan-i-Ariz (Military Department)
Diwan-i-Insha (Department of Correspondence)
Diwan-i-Risalat (Department of Appeals)
Diwan-i-Mustakharaj (Department of Arrears)
Diwan-i-Riyasat (Department of Commerce)
Diwan-i-Kohi (Department of Agriculture)
Diwan-i-Bandgan (Department of Slaves)
Diwan-i-Khairat (Department of Charity)
Diwan-i-Isthiaq (Department of Pensions)

## Head (Founded by)

Wazir
Ariz-i-Mumalik
Dabir-i-Mumalik
Dabir-i-Mulq
(Founded by Alauddin khilji)
Rais-i-Mumalik
(Founded by Alauddin khilji)
(Founded by Md-bin-Tughlaq)
(Founded by Firoz Tughlaq)
(Founded by Firoz Tughlaq)
(Founded by Firoz Tughlaq)

## Administrative Unit

Iqta (i.e. Province)
Shiq (i.e. District)
Paragana (i.e. Taluka)
Gram (i.e. Village)

## Head

Muqti or Wali
Siqdar
Chaudhary and Amil
Muqaddam, Khut

## Art and Architecture Under Delhi Sultanate

- The new features brought by the Turkish conquerors were : (i) the dome (ii) the lofty towers (iii) the true arch unsupported by beam (iv) the vault.
- They also brought with them an expert knowledge of the use of concrete and mortar, which had hitherto been little used in India.
- *The Adhai-din ka Jhonpra* at Ajmer has a beautiful prayer hall, an exquisitely carved Mehrab of white marble and a decorative arch screen.
- The first example of true or voussoired arch is said to be the *tomb of Ghiyasuddin Balban* in Mehrauli (Delhi).
- In the Khilji period the usage of voussoired arch and dome was established and for all. Famous examples is *the tomb of Hazrat Nizamuddin Aulia* at Delhi.
- The Tughlaq buildings show stark simplicity and sobriety, probably indicating less financial resources as well as puritanical tests. Slopping walls and a dark appearance characterise the buildings. Some notable Tughlaq monuments were the fort of Tughlaquabad, the tomb of Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq which marked a new phase in Indo-Islamic architecture by serving as a model for later tombs and the fort of Adilabad.
- The Sayyid period was too short to allow construction of elaborate buildings.



- The construction of double domes was the main feature of Lodhi Architecture. One building worth noting is the *Moth ki Masjid* erected by the prime minister of Sikandar Lodhi.

### Literature of Delhi Sultanate

Book	Author	Historical Importance
Tahqiq-i-Hind	Alberuni	Alberuni was an Arabian scholar who wrote about the Slave dynasty
Tabaqat-i-Nasiri	Minhaj-us-Siraj	Gives an account of Iltutmish's reign
Laila-Majnu	Amir Khusrau	Court poet of Alauddin Khilji
Khazain-ul-Futuh	Amir Khusrau	Describes conquests of Alauddin Khilji
Tughlaq-Nama	Amir Khusrau	Gives account of Ghiyasuddin's reign
Nuh-Siphr	Amir Khusrau	Poetic description of Alauddin Khilji
Fatawa-i-Jahandari	Ziauddin Barani	Gives an account of the Tughlaq dynasty
Tarikha-i-Firoz Shahi	Ziauddin Barani	Gives an account of Firoz Shah's reign
Fatwah-i-Firoz Shahi	Firoz Shah	Gives an account of his reign
Kitab-fi-Tahqiq	Alberuni	About Indian sciences
Qanun-e-Masudi	Alberuni	About astronomy
Jawahar-fil-Jawahir	Alberuni	About mineralogy
Qamas	Firozabadi	Arabic words dictionary
Taj-ul-Maathir	Hasan Nizami	History of Ilbaris, the slave dynasty
Chach Namah	Abu Bakr	History of Sindh region
Lubab-ul-Alab	Bhukhari	Persian anthology
Khamsah	Amir khusrau	Literature and Poems
Shah Namah	Firdausi	About Mohmud Ghazni's reign
Kitab-ul-Rehla	Ibn Battutah	A travelogue with stories
Miftah-ul-Futuh	Amir Khusrau	Jalaluddin's conquest and life
Multa-ul-Anwar	Amir Khusrau	Literary masterpieces
Ayina-i-Sikandari	Amir Khusrau	Literary masterpieces
Hasht Bihisht	Amir Khusrau	Literary masterpieces
Shirin Khusrau	Amir Khusrau	Literary masterpieces
Tarik-i-Firoz Shahi	Shams-i-Shiraj Afif	History of Tughlaqs
Futuh-us-Salatin	Isami	About Bahmani Kingdom

### 9.II.Vijayanagar and Other Kingdoms

#### VIJAYANAGAR EMPIRE : 1336-1565 AD

- Vijayanagar kingdom and the city were founded by Harihar and Bukka (sons of Sangama) who were feudatories of Kakatiyas and later became minister in the court of Kampili.
- Vijayanagar kingdom lay in the Deccan, to the south of the Bahmani kingdom.



- Vijayanagar period can be divided into four distinct dynasties viz. Sangama, Saluva, Tuluva and Aravidu.

### The Sangama Dynasty : 1336-1485 AD

- **Harihara I and Bukka I (1336-56)** : They laid the foundation of Vijaya-nagar. Vijayanagar-Bahamani conflict began with the foundation of kingdoms. Clash of interests in three areas : Raichur doab (between Krishna and Tungabhadra), Krishna-Godavari delta and Marathwada.

#### Dynasty Period Founder

Sangama 1336-1485 Harihar and Bukka

Saluva 1485-1505 Saluva Narsimha

Tuluva 1505-1570 Veer Narsimha

Aravidu 1570-1650 Tirumala

- **Bukka I (1356-79)** : Bukka I strengthened the city of Vidyanagar and renamed it Vijayanagar. He restored harmony between the warring Vaishnavas and the Jains. The Rais of Malabar, Ceylon and other countries kept ambassadors at his court.

- **Harihar II (1379-1404)** : Bukka I was succeeded by his son Harihar II.

- **Deva Raya I (1406-22)** : He was the third son of Harihara II. His greatest achievement was his irrigation works where a dam was built across the Tungabhadra, with canals leading to the city. *Niccolo de conti* visited Vijayanagar during his reign.

- **Deva Raya II (1423-46)** : He was the grandson of Deva Raya I. Ahmad Shah I of Bahamani invaded Vijayanagar and exacted a war indemnity. Deva Raya II began the practice of employing Muslim cavalrymen and archers in the army on large scale (Their induction had began during Deva Raya I). He was called *Praudh Deva Raya*. In his inscriptions he has the title of *Gajabetekara* (the elephant hunter). Sri Lanka paid a regular tribute to him. He had learning for Vira Shavism, yet he respected other religions. *Dindima* was the court poet, whereas *Srinatha* was given the title of 'Kavisarvabhauma'. *Abdur Razzak*, the envoy of Shah Rukh visited Vijayanagar during his reign.

### The Saluva Dynasty : 1486-1505 AD

- **Saluva Narsimha (1486-91)** : He founded the Saluva dynasty.
- **Tirumal (1491) and Immadi Narasimha (1491-1505)** : Both were minors during the regency of *Narsa Nayaka*. *Vosco Da Gama* landed in Calicut during his reign in 1498.

### The Tuluva Dynasty : 1505-70 AD

- **Vira Narsimha (1505-09)** : Vir Narsimha, the son of Narsa Nayaka, became the king after the assassination of Immadi Narsimha, the last Saluva ruler.

### Krishna Deva Raya : 1509-29 AD

- Saluva Timma, the chief minister of Vira Narsimha, placed Krishna Deva Raya, the brother of Vira Narsimha, on the throne.
- Krishna Deva Raya maintained friendly relations with *Albuquerque*, the Portuguese governor, whose ambassador Friar Luis resided in Vijayanagar. He won Orissa (Gajapati kingdom) for Vijayanagar and Vijayanagar emerged strongest during his reign.



- He built the *Vijaya Mahal* (House of Victory), the *Hazara Rama temple* and the *Vithal Swami temple*.
- He took the titles of *Yavanaraja Sthapnachrya* (restorer of the Yavana kingdom i.e. Bidar kingdom) and *Abhinava Bhoja*. He is also known as *Andhra Bhoj* and *Andhra Pitamaha*.
- He was a gifted scholar in both Telugu and Sanskrit, of which only two works are extant: the Telugu work on polity '*Amuktamalyada*' and the Sanskrit drama '*Jambavati Kalyanam*'.
- His court was adorned by the 'Ashtadiggajas' (the eight celebrated poets of Telugu): 1. *Peddana* ('Manucharitam') 2. *Timmaya* ('Parijata Apaharanama') 3. *Bhattamurthi* 4. *Dhurjati* 5. *Mallan* 6. *Raju Ramchandra* 7. *Surona* 8. *Tenali Ramkrishna* ('Panduranga Mahamatya').
- Krishna Deva Raya, a contemporary of *Babur*, was the most illustrious ruler of the Deccan.
- *Duarte Barbosa* and *Dominigo Paes*, Portuguese travellers, visited Vijaya-nagar during the time of Krishna Deva Raya.
- **Achyuta Deva Raya (1529-42)**: Krishna Deva Raya nominated his brother Achyuta Deva Raya as the successor. During his reign, *Fernao Nuniz*, a Portuguese horse trader, visited Vijayanagar.
- **Venkata I (1542) and Sadashiva Raya (1543-76)**: Real power was exercised by *Rama Raja/Raya* and his two brothers. The five successor states of the Bahamani empire were divided through Rama Raja's diplomacy. The *Battle of Talikota* (also called the *Battle of Rakshasa-Tangadi*) was fought on 23 Jan., 1565. Rama Raja was taken prisoner and executed by Hussain Nizam Shah I. The city of Vijayanagar, which was the pride of medieval world, was mercilessly destroyed. *Caesar Frederick*, a Portuguese traveller, visited Vijayanagar in 1567-68 during the reign of Sadashiva Raya.

#### The Aravidu Dynasty : 1570-1650 AD

- Tirumala Raya, the brother of Rama Raja, ruled in the name of Sadasiva Raya. On his failure to repopulate Vijayanagar, he shifted the capital to *Penugonda*. He divided his empire into three practically linguistic sections.
- The empire slowly shrunk and the Aravidu dynasty ended in 1646.

#### Administration

- *Nayankar System* was the special feature of provincial administration.
- *Ayngar System* was the special feature of village administration. A body of 12 functionaries, known as ayangars, conducted village affairs.
- They were granted tax free lands '*Manyams*' which they were to enjoy in perpetuity.
- The Vijayanagar rulers issued gold coins called *Varahas* or *Pagodas*. The *Perta* was half a Varaha. The *Fanam* was one tenth of Perta. All were of gold mixed with alloy. The *Tar* was a silver coin. The *Jital* was a copper coin.

Administrative unit	Head
Mandalam (i.e. Province)	Mandaleswar
Nadu (i.e. District)	Naduprabhu
Gram (i.e. Village)	Gauda



### Society

- It was the only empire in Medieval India which employed women in the state services. Women even went to battles. Also, it was only state that promoted widow remarriage. Status of women improved during this time.
- Viprulu : Brahmins, Rajulu : Kshatriya, Nalavajativaru : Shudras  
Vipravinodins : Artisans, Kaikollas : Weavers, Sahagaman : Sati,  
Besabaga : Forced labour.

### Architecture

- The Vijayanagar rulers produced a new style of architecture called as *Provida* style. The large number and prominence of pillars and piers are some of the distinct features. Horse was the most common animal on the pillars.
- Another important features were the *Mandapa* or open pavillion with a raised platform, meant for seating deities and *Amman Shrine*.
- Important temples were *Vithalswami* and *Hazara Rama Temple* at Hampi, *Tadapatri* and *Parvati temples* at Chidambaram and *Varadraja* and *Ekambarnath temples* at Kanchipuram.
- The Vijayanagar rulers started the practice of inscribing the stories of the Ramayana and the Mahabharata on the walls of the various temples. Vithalswami and Hazara Rama Temple are examples of this type of wall inscription.

### Bahmani Kingdom

- **Alauddin Hasan Bahman Shah (1347-58)** : He was also known as *Hasan Gangu*. He founded the Bahmani kingdom with its capital at *Gulbarga* (First capital).
- **Tajuddin Firoz Shah (1397-1422)** : The greatest among them all. He was determined to make Deccan the cultural centre in India. He inducted large number of Hindus in the administration on large scale. He paid much attention to the ports of his kingdom, Chaul and Dabhol which attracted trade ships from Persian Gulf and Red Sea.
- **Ahmad Shah Wali (1422-35)** : Transferred the capital from Gulbarga to Bidar.

### Break up of Bahmani Empire into 5 Kingdoms

5 Kingdoms	Year	Founder	Dynasty	Annexation (by)
1. Berar	1484	Fataullah Imad Shah	Imad Shahi	1574 (Ahmadnagar)
2. Bijapur	1489	Yusuf Adil Shah	Adil Shahi	1686 (Aurangzeb)
3. Ahmadnagar	1490	Malik Ahmad	Nizam Shahi	1633 (Shahjahan)
4. Golconda	1518	Quli Qutub Shah	Qutub Shahi	1687 (Aurangzeb)
5. Bidar	1526-27	Amir Ali Barid	Barid Shahi	1610 (Bijapur)

- *Ibrahim Adil Shah*, the greatest ruler of Adil Shahi dynasty, introduced *Dakhini* in place of Persian as court language.
- *Gol Gumbaj* was built by *Muhammad Adil Shah*; it is famous for the so-called 'Whispering Gallery'.



- *Quli Qutub Shah* built the famous *Golconda Fort*.
- *Muhammad Quli Qutub Shah* was the greatest ruler of Qutub Shahi dynasty and it was he who founded the city of *Hyderabad* originally known as *Bhagyanagar* after the name of the Sultan's favourite, Bhagyamati and he also built the famous *Charminar*.

### Other Provincial Kingdoms

Kingdon	Capital	Founder
Jaunpur (Sharqui)	Jaunpur	Malik Sarwar (Khwaja Jaha)
Malwa	Dhar, Mandu	Dilawar Khan Ghori
Gujarat	Ahmadabad	Ahmad Jafar Khan Muzaffar shah
Bengal	Lakhnauti, Pandua, Ekdala	Shamsuddin Iliyas Shah
Khandesh	Burhanpur and Asirgadh	Malik Raza Faruqui

## 10. Religious Movements in 15th-16th Centuries

### I. Bhakti Movement

- The Bahkti movement was based on the doctrine that the relationship between God and man is through love and worship rather than through performing any ritual or religious ceremonies.
- It was in South India for the first time that Bahkti movement grew from a mere religious doctrine to a broad based popular movement based on social and religious equality. It was led by popular saint poets called '*Alvars*', who represented emotional side of Vaishnavism through collective songs called *Prabandhas*. It declined after the 10th century.
- But it was revived as a philosophical and ideological movement by '*Acharyas*' (who represented intellectual side of Vaishnavism in the 11th century). Most important among them was *Ramanuja*, whose disciple *Ramananda* took it to North India.

- **Main Features** : 1. Discarded rituals and sacrifices 2. Emphasised purity of heart and mind, humanism and devotion 3. Monotheistic in nature 4. God has either form (*Saguna*) or be formless (*Nirguna*) 5. Knowledge was a constituent part 6. An egalitarian movement. Denounced casteism. 7. Best form of worship is singing Bhajans and realisation of God by personal effort. No need of priestly class 8. Saint, preached in local languages.

### Bhakti Saints

- **Ramanuja (1017-1137)** : The Vaishnava saint from South India. The earliest exponent of Bhakti movement and *Vishitadvaita* philosophy.
- **Ramananda (14-15 Century)** : The first great Bhakti saint of North India who opened the doors of Bhakti without any distinction of birth, caste, creed or sex.

### Philosophy

Vishishtadvaita

Dvaitadvaita/Bhedabhed

Dvait

Shuddhadvaita

### Founder

Ramanuj Acharya

Nimbark Acharya

Madhva Acharya

Vishnu Swami



- **Kabir (1440-1510)** : The most radical disciple of Ramananda, who was opposed to caste, creed, image worship, unnecessary rituals and sought to remove distinction between Hindus and Muslims and believed in social unity.
- **Guru Nanak (1469-1538)** : A Nirguna Bhakti saint and social reformer. The first Sikh Guru and founder of Sikhism.
- **Chaitanya (1486-1533)** : One of the great saints of Krishna Bhakti cult and founder of *Gaudiya* or *Bengal Vaishnavism*.
- **Vidyapati (14-15th Century)** : Maithili saint-poet who wrote thousands of love-ballads on Radha-Krishna ('Padavali').
- **Purandar Das (1480-1564)** : The foremost and the most prolific Vaishnav saint-composer in Karnataka. Believed to have laid the foundations of the modern phase of Karnataka music.
- **Mirabai (1498-1546)** : The Rathor princess of Merata and daughter-in-law of Rana Sanga of Mewar. The most well-known woman Bhakti saint of the Krishna cult of Vaishnavism.
- **Vallabhacharya (1479-1531)** : A great saint of the Krishna Bhakti cult of Vaishnavism, who propounded the philosophy of *Pushti Marg*.
- **Surdas (1483-1563)** : A blind poet of Agra. He sang the glory of Krishna in his '*Sursagar*'.
- **Tulsidas (1532-1623)** : The greatest saint-poet of the Ram Bhakti cult of Vaishnavism. The celebrated author of '*Ramcharitamanas*', '*Kavitawali*' and '*Gitawali*'.
- **Shankara Deva (1449-1568)** : The founder of the Vaishnava devotional movement in Assam.
- **Dadu Dayal (1544-1603)** : A Nirguna Bhakti saint belonging to the tanner caste, who was born in Gujarat but spent his whole life in Rajasthan. Founder of the *Dadu panth*.
- **Thyagaraja (1767-1847)** : A Telugu who spent his life in Tamil Nadu. The greatest saint-composer of Karnataka music. He adorned God in the form of Rama, the incarnation of Vishnu and Hero of Valmiki's Ramayana.

#### **Bhakti saints of Maharashtra Dharma**

- **Jñanesvara/Jñanadeva (1271-1296)** : The fountain-head of the Bhakti movement in Maharashtra, founder of Marathi language and literature, wrote a long commentary on the *Bhagvad Gita*, called the '*Bhavarthadipka*', more commonly known as '*Jñaneshvari*'.
- **Namadeva (1270-1350)** : A contemporary of Jñanesvara. He was a tailor by caste and was opposed to all caste distinctions. The object of his devotion was *Vithoba* or *Vithal* (identified with Vishnu) of Pandharpur. The cult of Vithoba or Vithal known as *Varkari* sect was founded by Namadeva.
- **Ekknath (1533-1599)** : A great scholar saint from Maharashtra who wrote a commentary on the Ramayana called the '*Bhavartha Ramayana*' and another commentary on the eleventh book of the Bhagavata Purana.



- **Tukaram (1598-1650)** : The greatest Bhakti poet from Maharashtra, wrote devotional poems, known as *Abhangas*, which are the glory of devotional poetry.
- **Ramdas (1608-1681)** : The last great saint poet from Maharashtra. '*Dasabodha*' is the compilation of his writings and sermons.

## II. SUFI MOVEMENT

- Sufism is the mystical movement in Islam. The sufis while accepting the Shariat did not confine their religious practice to formal adherence and stressed cultivation of religious experience aimed at direct perception of God.
- The sufi doctrine was based on union with God which can be achieved through love of God, prayers, fasts and rituals, without reference to Hindu or Muslim.
- **Main Features** : 1. Organised in different *Silsilas* (orders) 2. Absorbed variety of ideas and practices from Hinduism, Christianity, Buddhism and Zoroastrianism. 3. Sufis aimed at service of mankind through spiritual self development 4. Eager for Hindu-Muslim unity and cultural synthesis 5. Opposed to orthodoxy, they preached faith and devotion to God. 6. Discouraged materialistic life but not in favour of complete renunciation.

### Sufi Saints

- **Khwaja Ali Hujjwiri (11th Century)** : Also Known as *Data Ganj Baksh*, the earliest Sufi saint of eminence known to have settled in India, the author of the celebrated manual of Sufism entitled '*Kashf-ul-Mahjub*'.
- **Shaikh Bahauddin Zakariya (1182-1262)** : The founder of the *Suhara-wardi* order who founded the first leading *Khanqah* in India at Multan.
- **Khwaja Muinuddin Chisti (1141-1236)** : The founder of the *Chisti* order-the first and most popular liberal Sufi order in India. He settled down at Ajmer about 1206. Other Chisti Sufi saints who followed khwaja Muinuddin Chisti or Khwaja Ajmeri were: *Sheikh Hamiduddin Nagauri* (1192-1274); *Khwaja Qutubuddin Bakhtiyar Kaki*, (died 1236) in whose memory Qutub Minar was built by Iltutmish; *Baba Fariduddin Ganj-i-Shakar* (1175-1265) popularly known as *Baba Farid*, built his Khanqah at Ajodan (Punjab) and was the first great Punjabi poet of Sufism; *Shaikh Nizamuddin Auliya* (1236-1325) who gained the popular title *Mehboob-i-Ilahi* (the beloved of the God), built his Khanqah in Delhi and was one of the most famous Sufi saint of the Chisti Order; *Shaikh Nasiruddin Mahmud* (d.1365), the charismatic Chisti saint, who was later known as *Chirag-i-Delhi* (the Lamp of Delhi); *Syed Muhammad Gesu Daraz* (d. 1421) who settled down at Gulbarga (Karnataka) was popularly known as *Bandanawaz* (Benefactor of God's creatures) and authored more than 30 books on Sufism-he was one of the early writers and poets in Urdu.
- **Shaikh Badruddin Samarkandi (13 Century)** : Founded *Firdausi* order which was restricted to Bihar.



- **Shah Nayamatullah Qadiri and Shah Abdullah Shuttari (15th Century)**: Shah Nayamatullah Qadiri founded the *Qadiriya* order and Shah Abdullah Shuttari (d. 1458) founded the *Shuttari* order. The former spread in Uttar Pradesh and Deccan, while the latter spread mainly in Madhya Pradesh and Gujarat. *Miyan Mir* (1550-1635) was the most popular Sufi saint of the Qadiriya order.
- | Sufi Words         | Meaning           |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| Tasawwuf           | Sufism            |
| Shaikh/Pir/Murshid | Spiritual teacher |
| Murid              | Disciple          |
| Khalifah           | Successor         |
| Khanqah            | The hospice       |
| Sama               | Musical recital   |
| Raksa              | Dance             |
| Fana               | Self annihilation |
- **Khwaja Baqi Billah (1536-1603)**: Founded the *Naqsbandiya* order and its most famous saint was *Shaikh Ahmad Sirhindi* (d.1625) known as *Mujaddid Alif*.

### Achievements of Bhakti and Sufi Movements

1. They influenced each other and inherited from each other
2. Bhaktism reformed Hinduism and Sufism liberalised Islam
3. Both put breaks on orthodoxy.
4. Both encouraged social reform measures
5. Atmosphere of inter-religious fraternity was created. Hindu and Muslims reconciled
6. Development of regional languages
7. A cultural synthesis took place which transformed a Muslim rule in India to a national govt. under Akbar.

## 11. Mughal Period (1526-40 and 1555-1857)

### Babur : 1526-30

- The foundation of the Mughal rule in India was laid by Babur in 1526.
- He was a descendant of Timur (from the side of his father) and Chengiz Khan (from the side of his mother).
- Babur defeated *Ibrahim Lodhi* in the *first battle of Panipat* on April 21, 1526 and established Mughal dynasty which lasted till the establishment of British rule in India.
- In 1527, he defeated *Rana Sanga* of Mewar at *Khanwa*.
- In 1528, he defeated *Medini Rai* of Chaneri at *Chanderi*.
- In 1529, he defeated *Muhammad Lodhi* (uncle of Ibrahim Lodhi) at *Ghaghra*.
- In 1530, he died at Agra. His tomb is at Kabul.
- He adopted *Tughluma* and flanking party system and first to use gunpowder and artillery in India.
- He wrote his autobiography *Tuzuk-i-Baburi* in Turki in which he gives an excellent account of India and his empire. *Tuzuk-i-Baburi* was translated in Persian (named *Baburnama*) by *Abdur Rahim Khanekhana* and in English by *Madam Bebridge*.
- He compiled two anthologies of poems, *Diwan* (in Turki) and *Mubaiyan* (in Persian). He also wrote *Risal-i-Usaz* or letters of Babur.



**Humayun : 1530-40 and 1555-56**

- He was the son of Babur and ascended the throne in 1530. His succession was challenged by his brothers *Kamran, Hindal* and *Askari* alongwith the Afghans.
- He fought two battles against *Sher Shah* at *Chausa* (1539) and at *Kannauj/Bilgram* (1540) and was completely defeated by him.
- He escaped to Iran where he passed 12 years of his life in exile.
- After Sher Shah's death Humayun invaded India in 1555 and defeated his brothers the Afghans. He once again became the ruler of India.
- He died while climbing down the stairs of his library (at *Din Panah*) in 1556 and was buried in Delhi.
- His sister, *Gulbadan Begum*, wrote his biography *Humayunama*.
- He built *Din Panah* at Delhi as his second capital.

**Sur Empire (Second Afghan Empire) : 1540-55****Sher Shah : 1540-45**

- He was the son of *Hasan Khan*, the Jagirdar of Sasaram. Ibrahim Lodhi transferred his father's jagir to him.
  - In 1527-28, he joined Babur's service and then returned to South Bihar as deputy governor and guardian of the minor king Jalal Khan Lohani, son of Bahar Khan Lohani.
  - Sher Shah usurps throne as *Hazarat-i-Ala*. He gained Chunar by marrying *Lad Malika*, the widow of governor of Chunar Fort.
  - In 1539, he defeated Humayun in the *battle of Chausa* and assumed the title *Sher Shah* as emperor.
- |  |                               |  |
|--|-------------------------------|--|
|  | <b>Administrative Unit</b>    | <b>Head</b>                                |
| ➤ In 1540, he defeated Humayun in the <i>battle of Kannauj/Bilgram</i> and annexed Kannauj.  | <b>Iqta</b> (i.e. Province)   | Haqim and Amin                             |
|  | <b>Sarkar</b> (i.e. District) | Shiqdar-i-Shiaqdaran and Munsif-i-Munsifan |
|  | <b>Pargana</b> (i.e. Taluka)  | Shiqdar and Munsif                         |
| ➤ As an emperor, he conquered Malwa (1542), Ranthambhor (1542), Raisin (1543), Rajputana-annexation of Marwar (1542), Chittor (1544) and Kalinjar (1545). He died in 1545 while conquering Kalinjar. | <b>Gram</b> (i.e. Village)    | Muqaddam and Amil                          |
- During his brief reign of 5 years he introduced a brilliant administration, land revenue policy and several other measures to improve the economic conditions of his subjects.
  - He issued the coin called *Rupia* and fixed standard weights and measures all over the empire.
  - He also improved communications by building several highways. He built the *Grand Trunk Road* (G.T. Road), that runs from Calcutta to Peshawar.
  - He set up cantonment in various parts of his empire and strong garrison was posted in each cantonments.



- He introduced the principle of local responsibility for local crimes. Muqaddams were punished for failure to find culprits.
- Land was measured and 1/3rd of the average was fixed as land tax. The peasant was given a *patta* (title deed) and a *qabuliyat* (deed of agreement) which fixed the peasant's rights and taxes. Zamindars were removed and the taxes were directly collected.
- He built *Purana Quila* at Delhi.
- He was buried in Sasaram.
- Sher Shah was succeeded by *Islam Shah* (1545-54); Islam Shah by *Muhammad Adil Shah* (1554-55).

### Akbar : 1556-1605

- Akbar, the eldest son of Humayun, ascended the throne under the title of *Jalaluddin Muhammad Akbar Badshah Ghazi* at the young age of 14 at *Kalanaur*, Punjab and his tutor *Bairam Khan* was appointed as the regent.
- *Second Battle of Panipat* (5 Nov., 1556) was fought between *Hemu* (the Hindu General of Muhammad Adil Shah) and Bairam Khan (the regent of Akbar). Hemu was defeated, captured and slain by Bairam Khan.
- This war ended the Mughal-Afghan contest for the throne of Delhi in favour of the Mughals and enabled Akbar to reoccupy Delhi and Agra.
- Akbar ended the regency of Bairam Khan in 1560 and at the age of 18 assumed the reigns of the kingdom.
- Akbar was under the influence of Maham Anga and Adham Khan junta from 1560 to 1562. [Petticoat Govt. : 1560-62]
- In his bid to expand his empire he conquered various provincial states.
- The Rajputa kingdom of Mewar put up a fierce defence under *Rana Uday Singh* (1537-72) and his son *Rana Pratap* (1572-97).
- Akbar tried to win over the Rajputas wherever possible and inducted Rajputa kings into Mughal service and treated them at par with Mughal nobility. By marrying *Harakha Bai*, daughter of *Bharmal/Biharimal* (Kutchhwaha Rajputa Ruler of Amer, Capital-Jaipur) in 1562. Akbar displayed his secular policy with the Hindus. Most of the Rajputa Kings recognised the supremacy of Akbar except Rana Pratap Singh and his son Amar Singh (Sisodiya Rajputas of Mewar, Capital-Chittor).
- The *Battle of Haldighati* (1576) was fought between *Rana Pratap* of Mewar and Mughal army led by *Man Singh* of Amer. Rana Pratap was defeated but he did not submit and continued the struggle.

### Akbar's Conquests

Year	Province	From
1560-62	Malwa	Baz Bahadur
1561	Chunar	Afghan
1562	Merata	Jaimal
1564	Gondwana (Gadh Katanga)	Rani Durgawati (regent of Bir Narayan)



Year	Province	From
1568	Chittor	Rana Uday Singh
1569	Ranthambor	Surjan Hada
1569	Kalinjar	Ram Chandra
1570	Marwar	Chandrasena, Kalyanmal, Raj Singh, Rawal Hariraj
1572	Gujarat	Bahadur Shah
1574-76	Bengal-Bihar	Daud Khan Karrani
1576	Haldighati	Rana Pratap
1581	Kabul	Mirza Hakim
1585-86	Kashmir	Yusuf Khan and Yakub Khan
1590-91	Sindh	Jani Beg Mirza
1590-92	Orissa	Kutul Khan and Nisar Khan
1591	Khandesh	Ali Khan
1595	Baluchistan	Yusufzai Tribes
1595	Kandhar	Muzaffar Husain Mirza
1597-1600	Ahmadnagar	Chand Bibi (regent of Bahadur Shah)
1601	Asirgarh	Miran Bahadur Khan

➤ As a revolt against the orthodoxy and bigotry of religious priests, Akbar proclaimed a new religion, *Din-i-Ilahi*, in 1581. The new religion was based on a synthesis of values taken from several religions like Hinduism, Islam, Jainism and Christianity. It did not recognize the prophet, *Birbal* was the only Hindu who followed this new religion. *Din-i-Ilahi*, however, did not become popular.

➤ Akbar built *Fatehpur Sikri*, *Agra Fort*, *Lahore Fort* and *Allahabad Fort* and *Humayun's Tomb* at Delhi. Fatehpur Sikri, place near

Agra—it is said that Akbar had no son for a long time. *Sheikh Salim Chisti*, a Sufi saint blessed Akbar with a son who was named *Salim/Sheikho Baba* (Jahangir). In honour of Salim Chisti, Akbar shifted his court from Agra to Fatehpur Sikri.

➤ He was patron of the art and in his court many persons flourished.

#### Important Years of Akbar

- 1562 Visited Ajmer first time
- 1562 Ban on forcible conversion of war-prisoners into slaves
- 1563 Abolition of Pilgrimage Tax
- 1564 Abolition of Jaziya
- 1571 Fondation of Fatehpur Sikri
- 1574 Mansabadari System introduced
- 1575 Ibadatkhana was built
- 1578 Parliament of Religions in Ibadatkhana
- 1579 Proclamation of 'Mazhar' (written by Faizi)
- 1580 Dahsala Bandobast introduced
- 1582 Din-i-Ilahi/Tauhid-i-Ilahi
- 1584 Ilahi Samvat i.e. Calender
- 1587 Ilahi Gaz i.e. Yard



- **Navaratna i.e. nine jewels of Akbar :** 1. *Birbal* (administrator) 2. *Abul Fazl* (scholar and statesman) 3. *Faizi* (scholar and statesman, brother of Abul Fazl) 4. *Todarmal* (Finance Minister, *Dahsala Bandobast/Jabti*) 5. *Bhagwandas* (Mansabdar, son of Bharmal) 6. *Man Singh* (Mansabdar, Grandson of Bharmal) 7. *Tansen* (Musician) 8. *Abdur Rahim Khanekhana* (Statesman, Hindi poet) 9. *Mulla Do Pyaja*.
- *Tulsidas* ('Ramcharitamanas') also lived during Akbar's period.
- When Akbar died, he was buried at *Sikandara* near Agra.
- Akbar is considered 'the real founder of the Mughal empire' in India.
- He was the first Mughal ruler who divorced religion from politics.
- *Birbal* was killed in the battle with Yusufzai Tribe (1586).
- *Abul Fazl* was murdered by *Bir Singh Bundela* (1601).
- Akbar gave Mughal India one official language (Persian).

### **Jahangir : 1605-27**

- Salim, son of Akbar, came to the throne after Akbar's death in 1605. He issued 12 ordinances.
- He is known for his strict administration of justice. He established *Zanjir-i-Adal* (i.e. Chain of Justice) at Agra Fort for the seekers of royal justice.
- In 1611, Jahangir married *Mihar-un-nisa*, widow of Sher Afghan, a Persian nobleman of Bengal. Later on she was given the title *Nurjahan*. Nurjahan exercised tremendous influence over the state affairs. She was made the official *Padshah Begum*.
- Jahangir issued coins jointly in Nurjahan's name and his own.
- Jahangir also married *Manmati/Jagat Gosai/Jodha Bai* of Marwar, and a Kachhwaha princess.
- In 1608, *Captain William Hawkins*, a representative of East India Company came to Jahangir's court. He was given the mansab of 400. In 1615 *Sir Thomas Roe*, an ambassador of King James I of England also came to his court. Though initially Jahangir resisted, later on he granted permission to the English to establish a trading port at Surat.
- A political triumph during Jahangir reign was the submission of *Rana Amar Singh* of Mewar (1615). Jahangir captured the strong fort of Kangara (1620). A part of Ahmadnagar was also annexed. *Malik Amber* ceded back to the Mughal the territory of Balaghat (Maharashtra).
- His reign was marked by several revolts. His son *Khusrau*, who received patronage of 5th Sikh Guru *Arjun Dev*, revolted against Jahangir (1605). Arjun Dev, was later sentenced to death for his blessing to the rebel prince (1606). During his last period, *Khurram (Shan-jahan)*, son of Jahangir, and *Mahavat Khan*, military general of Jahangir also revolted (*Khurram* : 1622-25 and *Mahavat Khan* : 1626-27).
- He wrote his memoirs *Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri* in Persian.
- He was buried in Lahore.



**Shahjahan : 1628-58**

- Mother's name-*Jagat Gosai/Jodha Bai* (daughter of Raja Jagat Singh).
- Shahjahan ascended the throne in 1628 after his father's death.
- He was best known for his Deccan and foreign policies.
- The first thing that he had to face was revolts in Bundelkhand (Jujhar Singh Bundela of Orchha : 1628-35) and the Deccan (Khan-i-Jahan Lodhi, the governor of Deccan : 1629-31)
- Three years after his accession, his beloved wife *Mumtaz Mahal* (original name-*Arzumand Bano*) died in 1631. To perpetuate her memory he built the Taj Mahal at Agra in 1632-53.
- In 1631-32, he defeated the Portuguese.
- In addition to Jahangir's empire, Nizam Shahi's dynasty of Ahmadnagar was brought under Mughal control (1633) by Shahjahan. The Deccan Sultanate of Bijapur and Golconda accepted his suzerainty in 1636.
- He sent his army to Balkh in order to secure the defence of North-Western India (1647). Shahjahan who had recovered Kandhar (Afghanistan) in 1638 from the Iranians lost it again in 1647 despite three campaigns under prince Murad, Aurangzeb and Dara.
- Shahjahan's reign is described by French traveller *Bernier* and *Tavernier* and the Italian traveller *Nicoli Manucci*. *Peter Mundi* described the famine that occurred during Shahjahan's time.
- Shahjahan's reign is said to have marked the pinnacle of the Mughal dynasty and empire. He is known for the promotion of art, culture and architecture during his time. The *Red Fort*, *Jama Masjid* and *Taj Mahal* are some of the magnificent structures built during his reign.
- Shahjahan's failing health set off the war of succession among his four sons in 1657. Aurangzeb emerged the victor who crowned himself in July 1658. Shahjahan was imprisoned by his son Aurangzeb in the Agra Fort where he died in captivity in 1666. He was buried at Taj (Agra).

**War of Succession**

War of Bahadurpur, near Banaras	Feb. 1658	Dara and Shah Shuja
War of Dharmat, near Ujjain	April 1658	Dara and Aurangzeb-Murad
War of Samugarh, near Agra	May 1658	Dara and Aurangzeb-Murad
War of Khajua, near Allahabad	Dec. 1658	Aurangzeb and Shah Shuja
War of Deorai, near Ajmer	Mar. 1659	Aurangzeb and Dara

**Aurangzeb : 1658-1707**

- Aurangzeb defeated Dara at Dharmat (1658), Samugarh (1658) and Deorai in which Samugarh was decisive one and Deorai was last one.
- After victory, Aurangzeb was crowned at Delhi under the title *Alamgir*. He ruled for 50 years till his death in Feb., 1707 in Ahmadnagar.
- During the first 23 years of the rule (1658-81) Aurangzeb concentrated on North India. During this period the Marathas under *Shivaji* rose to power and were a force to reckon with.



- Aurangzeb captured *Guru Teg Bahadur*, the 9th Guru of Sikhs in 1675 and executed him when he refused to embrace Islam. The 10th and last Sikh Guru, *Guru Gobind Singh*, son of Guru Teg Bahadur, organised his followers into community of warrior called *Khalsa* to fight the Muslim tyranny and avenge the killing of his father. Guru Gobind Singh was, however assassinated in 1708 by an Afghan at Nander in Deccan. *Banda Bairagi*, a trusted disciple successor of Guru Gobind Singh continued the war against Mughals.

### Revolts During Aurangzeb's reign

Revolts	Year of Beginning	Leaders	Causes
<b>I. North India (1658-81)</b>			
Jat	1669	Gokula, Rajaram, Agrarian policy Churamani	
Bundela	1671	Champat Rai, Political and religious Chhatrasal	
Satnami	1673	Followers of Satnami Sect	Religious suppression
Sikh	1675	Guru Teg Bahadur, Guru Gobind Singh	Religious
Rajput: Rathor (Marwar)	1678	Durgadas (General of Ajit singh)	Succession to throne of Marwar
<b>II. South India (1682-1707)</b>			
Annexation of Bijapur	1686	Sikandar Adil Shah	Violation of treaty
Annexation of Golconda	1687	Abul Hasan Kutub Shah	Helping attitude to Maratha
Mughal-Maratha Struggle	1689	Sambhaji, Rajaram, Tarabai	Rising aspiration of Maratha nationalism

- Aurangzeb left the North in 1682 and for the next 25 years (1682-1707) made desperate bids to crush the Marathas.
- Shivaji was the most powerful Maratha king and an arch enemy of Aurangzeb. When Aurangzeb could not eliminate him, he conspired in 1665 with Jai Singh of Amber, a Rajput, to eliminate Shivaji. On a assurance given by Jai Singh, Shivaji visited Aurangzeb's court. Shivaji was imprisoned by Aurangzeb but he managed to escape and in 1674 proclaimed himself an independent monarch. He died in 1680 and was succeeded by his son Sambhaji, who was executed by Aurangzeb in 1689. Sambhaji was succeeded by his brother Rajaram and after his death in 1700, his widow Tarabai carried on the movements.
- The mughal conquests reached a climax during Aurangzeb's reign, as Bijapur and Golconda were annexed in 1686 and 1687, respectively.
- Aurangzeb died in 1707. He was buried at Khuldabad (Daulatabad).
- He was called *Zinda Pir*, the living saint.



- *Jaziya* was re-introduced. However, the Hindu Mansabdars maintained their high proportion during his rule.
- **Decline of the Mughal Empire:** After Aurangzeb, the Mughal empire rapidly declined. Important causes of the decline were: 1. Aurangzeb's Rajputa, Deccan and religious policies 2. Weak successors who were incompetent both as administrators and generals 3. Wars of succession 4. Factionalism among nobility after Aurangzeb 5. Jagirdari crisis 6. Growth of Maratha and other regional powers in Bengal, Hyderabad, Avadh, Mysore etc. 7. Foreign invasions by *Nadir Shah* (1739) and *Abdali*. 8. British conquest of India.

#### Important Years of Aurangzeb's religious policy

- 1659 Forbade inscription of kalama on the coins, celebration of Nauroj Festival; Appointment of *Muhatasib* (Regulator of moral character)
- 1663 Ban on Sati custom
- 1668 Ban on Hindu Festival
- 1669 Ban on Jharokha darshan, Forbade music in the court.
- 1670 Ban on Tuladan (weighing of the emperor)
- 1679 Re-introduction of *Jaziya*.

#### Later Mughals

**Bahadur Shah I (1707-1712)** : Original Name-*Muazzam*, Title-*Shah Alam I*.

**Jahandar Shah (1712-1713)** : Ascended the throne with the help of Zulfikar Khan; Abolished *Jaziya*.

**Farrukh Siyar (1713-1719)** : Ascended the throne with the help of Sayyid brothers-Abduall Khan and Hussain Khan.

**Muhammad Shah (1719-1748)** : In 1738-39, *Nadir Shah* raided India and took away Thakht-i-Taus (the peacock throne) and Kohinoor diamond.

**Ahmed Shah (1748-1754)** : Ahmad Shah Abdali (General of Nadir Shah) marched towards Delhi and Mughals ceded Punjab and Multan.

**Alamgir II (1754-1759)** : Ahmad Shah occupied Delhi. Later, Delhi was plundered by Marathas.

**Shah Alam II (1759-1806)** : Nazib Khan became very powerful in Delhi so much so that he could not enter Delhi for 12 years.

**Akbar II (1806-1837)** : Pensioner of East India Company.

**Bahadur Shah II (1837-1857)** : Last Mughal Emperor who was made premier during 1857 revolt. He was deported to *Rangoon* (Burma, now Myanmar) in 1858 where he died in 1862.

#### Administration

- Mughal empire was divided into *Subas* which were further subdivided into *Sarkar*, *Pargana* and *Gram*.
- However, it also had other territorial units as *Khalisa* (royal land), *Jagirs* (autonomous rajas) and *Inams* (gifted lands, mainly waste lands).
- There were 15 Subas (provinces) during Akbar's reign, which later increased to 20 under Aurangzeb's reign.



**Administrative unit Incharge**

**Suba** (i.e. Province) Sipahsalar/Subedar/Nizam—The Head Executive Diwan-Incharge of revenue department

**Sarakar** (i.e. District) Fauzdar-Administrative Head Amal/Amalguzar-Revenue collection

**Pargana** (i.e. Taluka) Siqdar-Administrative Head Amin, Qanungo-Revenue officials

**Gram** (i.e. Village) Muqaddam-Headman, Patwari-Accountant

- Akbar introduced Mansabdari system. The term **Mansab** indicates the rank of its holder. Mansabdari was both civil and military. Almost the whole nobility, bureaucracy and military hold Mansabs.
- The Mughal Mansab was dual i.e. **Zat** (personal rank and pay status) and **Sawar** (number of horsemen to maintain).
- Mansabadars were of 3 categories: **Mansabadars**, **Amirs** and **Amir-i-umda**.
- According to pay mode they were of 2 types: **Naqdi** (paid through cash) and **Jagirdar** (paid through Jagirs).
- Jahangir added **Duaspah Sih-aspah** system i.e. one's sawar rank can be raised without raising his zat rank.
- Shahjahan added **Jama-Dami** or **Mahana Zagir** (Monthly Scale) system.
- It ultimately caused Jagirdari and agrarian crisis, which was a major cause of decline of Mughals.
- There were several methods of revenue collection in practice viz. **Kankut** (estimate), **Rai** (yield per unit area) and **Zabti** (based on the yields of crops).
- **Dahsala Bandobast** or **Zabti**: A standard method of collection based on rates of crops determined after 10 years assessment. **Todar Mal** pioneered it.
- Jagirdari system was the assignment of land in proportion to a Jagirdar's salary. Hence, every Mansabdar was entitled to a jagir if he was not paid in cash.
- **Madad-i-maash** or **Suyur ghal** or **Inam** were land grants to people of favour / religious assignment.

**Mughal Culture**

- Babur built two mosques, one at Kabulibagh in Panipat and the other at Sambhal in Rohilakhand.
- **Humayun's tomb** was built by his widow **Haji Begum**.
- An unusual building at Fatehpur Sikri is **Panch Mahal**. Panch Mahal has the plan of Buddhist vihara.
- The **Mariam's palace**, **Diwan-i-Aam**, **Diwan-i-khas** at Sikri are Indian in their plan.
- **Buland Darwaja** (built after Gujarat victory), formed the main entrance to Fatehpur Sikri.



- *Salim Chisti's tomb* (redone in Marble by Jahangir) is the first Mughal building in pure marble). *Palace of Birbal*, *Palace of Tansen* are also inside the Fatehpur Sikri.
- Akbar also began to build his own tomb at *Sikandara* which was later completed by Jahangir.
- The architecture of Fatehpur Sikri is known as Epic in red sand stone.
- Nurjahan built *Itimad-ud-daula/Mirza Ghiyas Beg's marble tomb* at Agra, which is noticable for the first use of *pietra dura* (floral designs made up of semiprecious stones) technique.
- Jahangir introduced vigorous use of marble instead of red sand stone and use of *pietra dura* for decorative purpose.
- Jahangir built *Moti Masjid* in Lahore and his mausoleum at *Shahdara* (Lahore).
- Mosque building activity reached its climax in *Taj Mahal*. Shahjahan also built the *Jama Masjid*.
- Some of the important buildings built by Shahajahan at Agra are *Moti Masjid* (only Mosque of marble), *Khaas Mahal*, *Musmman Burz* (Jasmine Palace where he spent his last year in captivity) etc.
- He laid the foundations of *Shahjahanabad* in 1637 where he built the *Red Fort* and *Takht-i-Taus (Peacock throne)*.
- Only building by Aurangzeb in the Red Fort is *Moti Masjid*.
- Only monument associated with Aurangzeb is *Bibi ka Makbara* which is the tomb of his wife *Rabbia-ud-daura* in Aurangabad.
- Aurangzab also built the *Badshahi Masjid* in Lohore.
- Humayun had taken into his service two master painter *Mir Syed Ali* and *Abdus Samad*.
- *Daswant* and *Basawan* were two famous painters of Akbar's court.
- *Abdul Hassan*, *Ustad Mansur* and *Bishandas* were three famous painters of Jahangir's court.
- Jahangir claims that he could distinguish the work of each artist in a picture.

#### Titles given by Mughal Ruler

Title	Person	Field	Ruler
Jagat Guru	Harivijay Suri	Jain Religion	Akbar
Zari Kalam	Mohammad Husain	Literature	Akbar
Sirin Kalam	Abdus Samad	Literature	Akbar
Raj Kavi	Faizi	Literature	Akbar
Kavi Priya	Birbal	Literature	Akbar
Nadir-ul-Asra	Ustad Mansur	Painting	Jahangir
Nadir-uz-Zaman	Abdul Hassan	Painting	Jahangir
Guna Samudra	Lal khan	Music	Shahjahan
Raj Kavi	Kalim	Literature	Shahjahan
Mahakaviray	Sundardas	Literature	Shahjahan



**Literature of Mughal Period**

<b>Book</b>	<b>Author</b>	<b>Contents</b>
Tuzuk-i-Baburi	Babur	Describes military tactics and administrative organisation during Babur's reign
Qanun-i-Humayun	Khwand Amair	Describes Humayun's administration, festivities and buildings of that period
Humayun Nama	Gulbadan Begum	Biography of Humayun
Akbar Nama	Abul Fazl	Gives a history of Akbar's reign
Tobaqat-i-Akbari	Khwajah Nizamuddin Ahmad Baksh	-do-
Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri	Jahangir	Memoirs of his own reign
Iqbalnama-i-Jahangiri	Muhammad Khan	History of Jahangir's reign
Chahar Chaman	Chandra Bhan Brahman	History of Shahjahan's rule
Alamgir-nama	Munshi Mirza Muhamma Kazin	Gives an account of Aurangzeb's first 10 years of rule
Massir-i-Alamgiri	Saqi Mustaid Khan	Official history of Aurangzeb's reign written after his death
Ain-i-Akbari	Abul Fazl	History of Akbar's reign
Muntakhab-ul-Tawarikh	Badauni	History of Akbar's rule
Tawarikh-i-Alfi	Mulla Daud	-do-
Nuriyya-i-Sultaniyya	Abdul Haq	Theory of Kinship during Mughal Period
Waqt-i-Hyderabad	Nimat Khan Ali	Aurangzeb's Golconda conquest
Futuh-at-i-Alamgiri	Ishwar Das	Aurangzeb's history
Nuskha-i-Dilkusha	Bhimsen Saxena	Analysis of Aurangzeb's rule and character
Khulasat-ul-Tawarikh	Sujan Raj Khatri	History of Aurangzeb's rule
Padshah Namah	Abdul Hamid Lahori	History of Shah Jahan's reign
Padshah Namah	Mumahad Waris	-do-
Shahjahan Namah	Muhammad Salih	-do-
Shahjahan Namah	Inyat Khan	-do-
Hamlai-Haidri	Muhammad Rafi Khan	History of Aurangzeb's rule
Namah-e-Alamgiri	Aquil Khan Zafar	-do-



Book	Author	Contents
Sirr-i-Akbar	Dara Shikoh	Urdu translation of Upanishad
Safinat-ul-Auliya	-do-	Biographies of Sufi Saints
Majma-ul-Bahrain	-do-	Philosophical ideas discussed
Raqqat-e-Alamgiri	Aurangzeb	A compendium of his letters
Hasmat-ul-Arifin	Dara Shikoh	Religious ideas discussed

## 12. Maratha State (1674-1720) and Maratha Confederacy (1720-1818)

### Maratha State : 1674-1720

#### Shivaji : 1674-80

- Born at Shivneri Fort in 1627.
- Father-*Shahji Bhonsle*, Mother-*Jija Bai*, Religious Teacher-*Samarth Ramdas*.
- Shivaji inherited the Jagir of Poona from his father in 1637.
- After the death of his guardian, *Dadaji Kondadev*, in 1647, he assumed full charge of his Jagir.
- He conquered many Forts viz. Singh Garh/Kondana (1643), Rohind and Chakan (1644-45), Toran (1646), Purandhar (1648), Rajgarh / Raigarh (1656), Supa (1656) and Panhala (1659).
- *Afzal Khan* was deputed by Adil Shah (Ruler of Bijapur) to punish Shivaji; but the later Afzal Khan was killed by Shivaji in 1659.
- *Shaista Khan*, governor of Deccan, was deputed by Aurangzeb to put down the rising power of Shivaji in 1660. Shivaji lost Poona and suffered several defeats till he made a bold attack on Shaista Khan (1663) and plundered Surat (1664) and later Ahmadnager.
- *Raja Jai Singh* of Amber was then appointed by Aurangzeb to put down Shivaji (1665). Jai Singh succeeded in besieging Shivaji in the fort of Purandhar. Consequently the *treaty of Purandhar* (1665) was signed according to which Shivaji ceded some forts to the Mughals and paid a visit to the Mughal court at Agra.
- In 1674 Shivaji was coronated at capital Raigarh and assumed the title of *Haindava Dharmodharak* (Protector of Hinduism).
- After that *Chhatrapati* Shivaji continued the struggle with Mughals and Siddis (Janjira). He conquered Karnataka during 1677-80.

#### Shivaji's Administration

- Shivaji divided his territory under his rule (*Swaraj*) into three provinces, each under a viceroy. Provinces were divided into *prants* which were subdivided into *parganas* or *tarafs*. The lowest unit was village headed by *Patel* (Headman).
- Shivaji was helped by the *ashtapradhan* (eight minister) which was unlike a collective of ministers, for there was no collective responsibility; each minister was directly responsible to Shivaji.



**Shivaji's Ashtapradhan**

<b>Peshwa</b> (Mukhya Pradhan)	Finance and general administration, later he became Prime Minister and assumed great importance.
<b>Majumdar</b> (Amatya)	Revenue and Finance Minister
<b>Wagenavis</b> (Mantri)	Home Minister
<b>Dabir</b> (Sumant)	Foreign Minister
<b>Surnavis</b> (Sachiv)	Head of Royal correspondence
<b>Pandit Rao</b> (Sadar)	Head of religious affairs
<b>Sar-i-Naubat</b> (Senapati)	Military commander. This is an honorary post with no real military powers.
<b>Nyayadhish</b>	Justice

- Most of the administrative reforms of Shivaji were based on Malik Ambar's (Ahmadnagar) reforms.
- Assessment of land revenue was based on measurement. The **Kathi** of Malik Ambar was adopted as the unit of measurement.
- Land revenue was fixed 1/3rd i.e. 33% of the gross produce (initially), 2/5th i.e. 40% of the gross produce (after reforms).
- **Chauth** was 1/4th i.e. 25% of the land revenue was paid to the Marathas so for not being subjected to Maratha raids.
- **Sardeshmukhi** was an additional levy of 10% on those lands of Maharashtra over which the Maratha claimed hereditary rights, but which formed part of the Mughal Empire.

**Sambhaji : 1680-89**

- Sambhaji, the elder son of Shivaji, defeated Rajaram, the younger son of Shivaji, in the war of succession.
- He provided protection and support to **Akbar II**, the rebellious son of Aurangzeb.
- He was captured at Sangameswar by a Mughal noble and executed.

**Rajaram : 1689-1700**

- He succeeded the throne with the help of the ministers at Rajgarh.
- He fled from Rajgarh to Jinji in 1689 due to a Mughal invasion in which Rajgarh was captured along with Sambhaji's wife and son (Shahu) by the Mughals.
- Rajaram died at Satara, which had become the capital after the fall of Jinji to Mughal in 1698.
- Rajaram created the new post of **Pratinidhi**, thus taking the total number of minister to nine (Pratinidhi + Ashtapradhan).

**Tarabai : 1700-07**

- Rajaram was succeeded by his minor son Shivaji II under the guardianship of his mother Tarabai.
- Tarabai continued the struggle with Mughals.



**Shahu : 1707-1749**

- Shahu was released by the Mughal emperor Bahadur Shah.
- Tarabai's army was defeated by Shahu in the *battle of Khed* (1700), and Shahu occupied Satara.
- But the Southern part of the Maratha kingdom with its capital Kolhapur continued to be under the control of the descendents of Rajaram (Shivaji II and later Shambhaji II).
- Shahu's reign saw the rise of Peshwas and transformation of the Maratha kingdom into an empire based on the principle of confederacy.

**Balaji Viswanath (1713-20) : The First Peshwa**

- He began his career as a small revenue official and was given the title of *Sena Karte* (marker of the army) by Shahu in 1708.
- He became *Peshwa* in 1713 and made the post the most important and powerful as well as hereditary.
- He played a crucial role in the final victory of Shahu by winning over almost all the Maratha Sardars to the side of Shahu.
- He concluded an agreement with the Syed Brothers-King Maker (1719) by which the Mughal emperor Farrukh Siyar recognised Shahu as the king of the Swarajya.

**Maratha Confederacy : 1720-1818****Baji Rao I : 1720-40**

- Baji Rao, the eldest son of Balaji Viswanath, succeeded him as *Peshwa* at the young age of 20.
- He was considered the greatest exponent of guerrilla tactics after Shivaji and Maratha power reached its zenith under him.
- Under him several Maratha families became prominent and got themselves entrenched in different parts of India.
- After defeating and expelling the Siddis of Janjira from the mainland (1722), he conquered Bassein and Salsette from the Portuguese (1739).
- He also defeated the Nizam-ul-Mulk near Bhopal and concluded the *treaty of Daula Sarai* by which he got Malwa and Bundelkhand from the latter (1738).
- He led innumerable successful expeditions into North India to weaken the Mughal empire and to make the Marathas the supreme power in India.
- He said about Mughals : *'Let us strike at the trunk of the withering tree and the branches will fall of themselves'*.

Kingdom	Territory
The Scindia	Gwalior
The Holkar	Indore
The Pawar	Dhar
The Gaekwad	Baroda
The Bhonsle	Nagpur
The Peshwa	Poona

**Balaji Baji Rao : 1740-61**

- Popularly known as *Nana Saheb*, he succeeded his father at the age of 20.



- After the death of Shahu (1749), the management of all state affairs was left in his hands.
- In an agreement with the Mughal emperor Ahmad Shah, the Peshwa was to protect the Mughal empire from internal and external enemies (like Ahmad Shah Abdali) in return for Chauth (1752).
- *Third battle of Panipat (Jan 14, 1761)* resulted in the defeat of the Marathas by Ahmad Shah Abdali and the death of Viswas Rao and Sadashiv Rao Bhau. This event shocked the Peshwa Balaji Baji Rao and after six months he also died. This battle ended the Maratha power.
- **Successors of Balaji Baji Rao :** *Madhav Rao* (1761-72), *Narayan Rao* (1772-73), *Sawai Madhav Rao* (1773-95) and *Baji Rao II* (1795-1818).

### Anglo-Maratha Wars

- **First Anglo-Maratha War (1775-82) :** Favouring the cause of Raghunath Rao (Raghoba) for Peshwaship, English (Hastings) came in conflict with the Marathas. On being defeated, the British had to sign the humiliating *Convention of Wadgaon* (1779).
- British later signed *Treaty of Salbai* (1782), renouncing the cause of Raghoba.
- **Second Anglo-Maratha war (1803-06) :** The Maratha Peshwa signed the *Subsidiary Alliance Treaty of Bassein* (1802).
- The Maratha confederacy, which did not like the idea challenged the British power but were defeated by the British.
- **Third Anglo-Maratha war (1817-18) :** Lord Hastings was determined to proclaim British paramountcy in India. He moved against *Pindaris* transgressed the sovereignty of the Maratha chiefs and the war began.
- The Marathas were decisively defeated.

## 13. The Advent of the Europeans

Company	Estb.	Head Quarter/Capital
Portuguese East India company	1498	Cochin (1510-30), Goa (1530-1961)
English East India Company	1600	West coast : Surat (1608-87), Bombay (from 1687) East coast : Koromandal, Masulipattanam (1611-41), Madras (from 1641) Bengal : Under Madras (upto 1700) Calcutta (from 1700)
Dutch East India Company	1602	East coast: Koromandal, Pulicut (upto 1690), Negapattanam (from 1690); Bengal : Hugli (from 1655)
Danish East India Company	1616	Serampur (Bengal) : 1676-1845
French East India Company	1664	Surat (1668-73), Pondicherry (1673-1954)

**Note :** Danish company were forced to sell all their settlements in India to the British in 1845.



**Portuguese**

- The Cape route was discovered from Europe to India by *Vasco da Gama*. He reached the port of Calicut on May 17, 1498 and was received by the Hindu ruler of Calicut (Known by the title of *Zamorin*).
- This led to the establishment of trading stations at Calicut, Cochin and Cannanore.
- Cochin was the early capital of the Portuguese in India. Later Goa replaced it.
- *Francisco de Almeida* was the first governor of Portuguese. Almeida (1505-09) introduced '*the policy of Blue water*'.
- *Alfonso d' Albuquerque* was the second governor of Portuguese. Albuquerque (1509-15) introduced '*the policy of Imperialism*'. He captured Goa from the ruler of Bijapur in 1510.
- *Nino da Cunha* (1529-38) transferred his capital from Cochin to Goa (1530) and acquired Diu and Bassein (1534) from Bahadur Shah of Gujarat.
- *Martin Alfonso de Souza* (1542-45) : The famous Jesuit Saint *Francis Xavier* arrived in India with him.
- The Portuguese power witnessed a decline by the end of the 16th century.
- They lost Hugli in 1631 after being driven out by Qasim Khan, a Mughal noble of Shahjahan.
- In 1661 the King of Portugal gave Bombay to Charles II of England as dowry when he married the former's sister.
- The Marathas captured Salsette and Bassein in 1739.
- In the end they were left only with Goa, Diu and Daman which they retained till 1961.

**Dutch**

- Formation of the company in March, 1602, by a charter of Dutch parliament the Dutch East India Company was formed with powers to make wars, conclude treaties, acquire territories and build fortresses.
- The Dutch set up factories at Masulipattam (1605), Pulicat (1610), Surat (1616), Bimilipattam (1641), Karaikal (1645), Chinsura (1653), Kasimbazar, Baranagore, Patna, Balasore, Negapatam (all in 1658) and Cochin (1663).
- The Dutch replaced the Portuguese as the most dominant power in European trade with the East, including India.
- Pulicat was main centre in India till 1690, after which Negapatam replaced it.
- The Dutch conceded to English after their defeat in the *battle of Bedera* in 1759.

**English**

- Before the English East India Company established trade in India, *John Mildenhall*, a merchant adventurer, was the first English man who arrived in India in 1599 by the over land route, ostensibly for the purpose of trade with Indian merchants.



- 'The Governor and Company of Merchants of London Trading into the East Indies', popularly known as the English East India company, was formed in 1600.
- *Captain William Hawkins* arrived at Jahangir's court (1609) to seek permission to open a factory at Surat. A Farman was issued by Jahangir permitting the English to build a factory at Surat (1613).
- *Sir Thomas Roe* came to India as ambassador of James I to Jahangir's court in 1615 to obtain the permission to trade and erect factories in different parts of the empire.
- The English East India Company acquired Bombay from Charles II on lease. *Gerald Aungier* was its first governor from 1669 to 1677.
- In 1690, *Job Charnock* established a factory at Sutanati and the zamindari of the three villages of *Sutanati*, *Kalikata* and *Gobindpur* was acquired by the British (1698). These villages later grew into the city of *Calcutta*. The factory at Sutanati was fortified in 1696 and this new fortified settlement was named *Fort William* in 1700.
- In 1694, the British parliament passed a resolution giving equal rights to all Englishmen to trade in the East. A new rival company, known as 'the English Company of Merchants Trading to the East Indies' was formed (1698).
- The final amalgamation of the company came in 1708 under the title of 'The united company of Merchants of England Trading to the East Indies'. This new company continued its existence till 1858.

### French

- The French East India Company was formed by *Colbert* under state patronage in 1664.
- The first French factory was established at Surat by *Francois Caron* in 1668.
- A factory at Masulipatam was set up in 1669.
- The French power in India was revived under *Lenoir* and *Dumas* (governors) between 1720 and 1742. They occupied Mahe in the Malabar, Yanam in Coromandal and Karaikal in Tamil Nadu (1739).
- The arrival of *Dupleix* as French governor in India in 1742 saw the beginning of Anglo-French conflict (Carnatic Wars) resulting in their final defeat in India.

### Anglo-French Conflict/Carnatic Wars

- An instance of Anglo French rivalry.
- **First Anglo-French war (1746-48)** : The French besieged Madras. At St. Thome battle the Nawab of Carnatic's army was defeated by French under Dupleix.
- The *Treaty of Aix-La-Chapelle (1748)* ended the war of Austrian succession and First Anglo-French war in India.
- **Second Anglo-French war (1749-54)** : Dupleix aligned with Muzaffar Jung (Hyderabad) and Chanda Sahib (Carnatic/ Arcot). After initial reverses, Robert Clive emerged victorious.



- The *treaty of Pondicherry / Treaty by Godehu* (new French governor in place of Dupleix) : 1754-ended the Second Anglo-French War.
- **Third Anglo-French war (1758-63)** : French Count de Lally captured Fort St. David. French were defeated at Wandiwash (1760). It was a decisive defeat of French.
- The *treaty of Paris (1763)* ended the Third and Final Anglo-French war in India. Pondicherry was returned to French by this treaty.

## MODERN INDIA

### 14. Expansion of British Power

(In the context of Bengal, Mysore, Punjab etc.)

#### Bengal

- **Murshid Quli Khan (1717-27)** : In 1717, Murshid Quli Khan was appointed as Bengal's Subedar i.e. governor by Mughal emperor Farrukh Siyar. Grant of the Governorship of Orissa also to him by Farrukh Siyar in 1719. He transferred the capital of Bengal from Dacca to **Murshidabad**.
- **Shujauddin (1727-39)** : He was the son-in-law of Murshid Quli Khan. He was granted the Governorship of Bihar by Mughal emperor Muhammad Shah 'Rangeela' in 1733.
- **Sarfaraj Khan (1739-40)** : He was the son of Shujauddin and was murdered by Alivardi Khan, the Deputy Governor of Bihar, in 1740.
- **Alivardi Khan (1740-56)** : Legalised his usurpation by receiving a **farman** from Mughal emperor Muhammad Shah 'Rangeela' after paying him Rs. 2 Crores. He prevented the English and the French from fortifying their factories at Calcutta and Chandranagore respectively.

#### Sirajuddaula : 1756-57

- Alivardi Khan was succeeded by his grandson Sirajuddaula.
- Sirajuddaula seized the English factory at Kasimbazar. On 20th June, 1756, Fort William surrendered but Robert Clive recovered Calcutta.
- On 2nd Jan. 1757, **Treaty of Alinagar** was signed, where by Siraj conceded practically all the demands. British then captured Chandranagore, the French settlement, on March 1757.
- The **Battle of Plassey** was fought on 23 June, 1757. Owing to the conspiracy, the Nawab was defeated.
- The following betrayed the Nawab :

**Mir Jafar** : Mir Bakshi

**Manikchand** : Officer in charge of Calcutta

**Amichand** : Rich Sikh merchant

**Jagat Seth** : Biggest banker of Bengal

**Khadim Khan** : Commanded a large number of Nawab's troops.

#### Mir Jafar : 1757-60

- The company was granted undisputed right to free trade in Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. It received the zamindari of 24 Parganas. Mir Jafar, however, fell into arrears and was forced to abdicate in favour of his son-in-law Mir Qasim.



**Mir Qasim : 1760-64**

- Mir Qasim ceded Burdwan, Midnapore and Chittagong. He shifted his capital from Murshidabad to *Munger*.
- Mir Qasim soon revolted as he was angry with the British for misusing the *dastak* (free duty passes). However, having been defeated by the British, he fled to Awadh, where he formed a confederacy with Awadh ruler Shujauddaula and Mughal emperor Shah Alam II.
- The *Battle of Buxar (1764)*: Mir Qasim, Shujauddaula and Shah Alam II were defeated by Munro.
- Mir Jafar was again placed on the throne.
- **Successors of Mir Qasim** : Mir Jafar (1764-65), Nazmuddaulah (1765-66), Saifuddaula (1766-70), Mubaraquddaula (1770-72).
- On Mir Jafar's death, his son Nazmuddaula was placed on the throne and signed a treaty on 20th Feb., 1765 by which the Nawab was to disband most of his army and to administer Bengal through a Deputy Subedar nominated by the Company.
- Clive concluded two separate *treaties of Allahabad* with Shah Alam II (12 Aug., 1765) and Shujauddaula (16 Aug., 1765).

**Dual Government of Bengal : 1765-72**

- Dual Government of Bengal started in 1765.
- The Company acquired both *Diwani and Nizamat* rights from Nazmuddaula, the Nawab of Bengal. But the company did not take over direct administration and revenue collection.
- Warren Hastings ended the dual system of government in 1772.

**Mysore****Haider Ali : 1761-82**

- Haider Ali began his career as a soldier in the service of the Mysore state, later he became the faujdar of *Dindigul*. He established a modern arsenal in Dindigul with the help of French.
- In 1761, he overthrewed the Nanjarajar (the powerful Prime Minister of Wodeyar king Krishnraja I) and usurped power, though continuing to recognise Krishnraja I as the lawful ruler.
- **First Anglo-Mysore war (1766-69)**: Haider Ali defeated the British. The *Treaty of Madras (1769)* signed.
- **Second Anglo-Mysore war (1780-84)**: Warren Hastings attacked French port Mahe, which was in Haider Ali's territory.
- Haider Ali led a joint front with Nizam and Maratha and captured Arcot (Capital of Carnatic state).
- In 1781, Haider Ali was defeated at Porto Novo by Eyrecoot.
- He died during the Second Anglo-Mysore war.

**Tipu Sultan 1782-99**

- Haider Ali was succeeded by his son Tipu Sultan in 1782.
- He continued the Second Anglo-Mysore war till 1784.
- The *Treaty of Mangalore (1784)* was signed by Tipu Sultan which ended the Second Anglo-Mysore war.



- **Third Anglo-Mysore war (1790-92)** : Maratha and Nizam aided the British, Cornwallis captured Bangalore. By the *Treaty of Seringapatnam (1792)*, Tipu ceded half of his territory.
- **Fourth Anglo-Mysore war (1799)** : Lord Wellesly attacked and Tipu Sultan died.
- Tipu was the only Indian ruler who have understood the importance of economic strength as the foundation of military strength.
- Tipu established the embassies to France, Turkey, Iran and Pegu to develop foreign trade.
- Tipu planted a 'tree of liberty' at his capital Seringapatnam and became a member of Jacobian Club.

### Punjab

- Guru Gobind Singh, the 10th and the last Guru of the Sikhs, transformed the religious sect into a military brotherhood.
- In the confusion and disorder that followed the invasion of Nadir Shah and Ahmad Shah Abdali, the sikhs increased their military strength and became a strong power.
- **Maharaja Ranjit Singh (1792-1839)** : He was the greatest Indian ruler of his time and founder of the Sikh rule in the Punjab. Born in 1780 at Gujranwala, he occupied *Lahore* in 1799 and made it his capital. He conquered Amritsar in 1802, occupied Ludhiana and after incessant wars, annexed Kangra, Attock, Multan, Kashmir, Hazara, Bannu, Derajat and Peshawar. He died in 1839.
- **Successors of Ranjit Singh** : *Kharak Singh* (1839-40), *Naunihal Singh* (1840), *Sher Singh* (1841-43), *Dalip Singh* (1843-49).
- The Sikh power was broken by the British after the death of Ranjit Singh.
- **First Anglo-Sikh war (1845-46)** : Sikhs were defeated in all the four battles at Mudki, Ferozshah, Aliwal and Sobraon. The *Treaty of Lahore (1846)* ended the war. Sir Henry Lawerence became the first resident.
- **Second Anglo-Sikh war (1848-49)** : Dalhousie annexed Punjab. Sir John Lawerence became the first chief commissioner of Punjab.

Kingdom	Year	Founder	Annexation
Nawab of Bengal	1713	Murshid Quli Jafar Khan	1765 (Treaty of Allahabad)
Maratha-confederacy	1720	Baji Rao I	1801 (Subsidiary Alliance)
Nawab of Carnatic/ Arcot	1720	Saadatulla Khan	1801 (Subsidiary Alliance)
Nawab of Avadh	1722	Mir Muhammad Amin Saadat Khan 'Burhan-ul-Mulk'	1801 (Subsidiary Alliance) 1856 (Dalhousie)
Nizam of Hyderabad	1724	Mir Qamruddin Chin Kilich Khan 'Nizam-ul-Mulk'	1798 (Subsidiary Alliance)
Mysore	1761	Haidar Ali	1799 (Subsidiary Alliance)
Punjab	1792	Ranjit Singh	1849 (Dalhousie)



## 15. Economic Impact of British Rule

### Three Stages of British Colonialism

#### First phase-The Mercantile phase (1757-1813)

- The East India Company used its political power to monopolize trade and dictate terms to traders of Bengal.
- Imposition of inflated prices of goods led to buccaneering capitalism whereby wealth flowed out of barrel of the British trader's gun.
- Revenues of Bengal were used to finance exports to England.

#### Second phase-The Industrial phase (1813-1858)

- India was exploited as a market for British goods.
- Act of 1813 allowed one way trade for the British, as a result the Indian markets flooded with cheap and machine-made imports. Indian traders lost foreign as well as home market.
- Indians were forced to export raw materials and import finished goods.
- Heavy import duty on Indian products to England to discourage them in the market.

#### Third phase-Financial phase (1860 onwards)

- The British consolidated their position in India and made India a market for manufacturers and a supplier of foodstuffs and raw materials.
- Introduction of Railways (1853), Post and Telegraph (1853), Banking System (Avadh Commercial Bank-1881).
- Heavy British investment in India and burden of public debt increases.
- Industries came into existence (Tata Iron and Steel in 1907).

### Drain of Wealth

- **Dadabhai Naoroji** cited it in his book "Poverty And Un-British Rule in India" (1867). **R C Dutta** in his "Economic History of India" (1901) blamed British policies for Indian economic ills.
- Drain of Wealth theory refers to a portion of national product of India which was not available for consumption to its people.
- Constituents of drain were :
  - (i) Extortion by company servants the fortunes from rulers, zamindars, merchants and common man and sending them home.
  - (ii) Purchasing goods out of revenues of Bengal and exporting them. This was called investment.
  - (iii) Duty free trade provided to the British gave them a competitive edge over Indian traders. These subsidies were financed from Indian treasury.
  - (iv) Remittances or salaries and other incomes by company officials send to England.
  - (v) Home charges or cost of salaries and pensions of company officials in India were paid from the treasury of India.
  - (vi) Hefty interests were paid to British investors.



### ➤ Effects

- (i) It stunted the growth of Indian enterprise and checked and retarded capital formation in India.
- (ii) It financed capitalist development in Britain.
- (iii) India was kept as a zone of free trade without allowing it to develop the ability to compete.
- (iv) Plantations, mines, jute mills, banking, shipping, export-import concerns promoted a system of interlocking capitalist firms managed by foreigners. It drained resources from India.

### Land Revenue Systems

#### Permanent Settlement/Istamarari (Sthayi) Bandobast

- Introduced in Bengal, Bihar, Orissa, and districts of Benaras and Northern districts of Madras by *Lord Cornwallis* in 1793.
- *John Shore* planned the Permanent Settlement.
- It declared zamindars as the owners of the land. Hence, they could keep 1/11th of the revenue collected to themselves while the British got a fixed share of 10/11th of the revenue collected. The zamindars were free to fix the rents.
- Assured of their ownership, many zamindars stayed in towns (absentee landlordism) and exploited their tenants.

#### Ryotwari System

- Introduced in Bombay and Madras. *Munro* (Viceroy) and *Charles Reed* recommended it.
- In this, a direct settlement was made between the government and the *ryot* (cultivator).
- The revenue was fixed for a period not exceeding 30 years, on the basis of the quality of the soil and the nature of the crop. It was based on the scientific rent theory of Ricardo.
- The position of the cultivator became more secure but the rigid system of revenue collection often forced him into the clutches of the moneylender.
- Besides this, the government itself became a big zamindar and retained the right to enhance revenue at will while the cultivator was left at the mercy of its officers.

#### Mahalwari System

- Modified version of zamindari settlement introduced in the Ganges valley, NWFP, parts of Central India and Punjab.
- Revenue settlement was to be made by village or estates with landlords. In Western Uttar Pradesh, a settlement was made with the village communities, which maintained a form of common ownership known as Bhaichare, or with Mahals, which were groups of villages.
- Revenue was periodically revised.

### Colonial Impact of Land Revenue Systems

- (i) The land settlements introduced market economy and did away



- with customary rights. Cash payment of revenue encouraged money-lending activity.
- (ii) It sharpened social differentiation. The rich had access to the courts to defend their property.
  - (iii) Forcible growing of commercial crops led the peasants to buy food grains at high prices and sell cash crops at low prices.
  - (iv) The stability of the Indian villages was shaken and the entire set up of the rural society began to break up.

### Peasant Movements

Movement	place	Year	Leaders
Indigo Revolt	Bengal	1859	Bishnu and Digant 1r Biswas
Pabna	Bengal	1870	Ishwar Roy, Sabu Pal, Khoodi Mollah
Deccan Riots	Maharashtra	1875	----
Ramosi Movement	Maharashtra	1879	Vasudev Balwant Phadke
Bijolia	Rajasthan	1913	Sitaram Das, Vijay Pathik Singh
Champaran	Bihar	1917	Gandhiji
Kheda	Gujarat	1918	Gandhiji and Vallabh Bhai Patel
Moplah	Kerala	1921	Sayyad Ali and Sayyid Fazl
Bordoli/Borsad	Gujarat	1928	Vallabh Bhai Patel
Tebhaga	Bengal	1946	Kampan Singh, Nyamat Ali
Punnapra-Waylar	Kerala	1946	----
Telengana	Andhra P.	1946	Kumaraiya and Sundaraiya
UP Kisan Sabha	UP	1918	Indra Narayan Dwivedi and Gauri Shankar Mishra
Avadh Kisan Sabha	UP	1920	Baba Ramachandra
Eka Movement	Avadh	1921	Madari Pasi
Forest Satyagrah	South India	1931	NV Rama Naidu, N G Ranga
All India Kisan Sabha	Lucknow	1936	Sahajanada Saraswati

### Tribal Revolts

Tribe	Year	Leaders	Cause
Chuar	1766-72	Raja Jagannath	Excess Revenue demand, Bengal famine
Bhills	1817	Sewaram	Agrarian hardship
Hos	1820	.....	British occupation of Singbhum
Ramosi	1822	Chittur Singh, Pratap Singh, Dattaraya Patkar	British Rule
Kolis	1824		Dismantle of forests



Tribe	Year	Leaders	Cause
Ahom	1828-33	Gomadhar Kunwar	British occupation
Khasi	1829-32	Tiruth Singh	British occupation
Kol	1831-32	Buddhu Bhagat	Land transfer to outsiders
Santhals	1855-56	Sidhu and Kanhu	British Rule
Naikda	1858	Rup Singh	For Dharma Raj against ban Joria Bhagat on grazing and timber
Bhuyan and Juang	1867-68	Ratna Nayak	Installation of British protege on throne
	1891	Dharni Nayak	
Kacha Nagas	1882	Sambhuden	British intervention
Munda (Ulgulan)	1899	Birsa Munda	Land system, Missionary activity and forced labour
Bhills	1913	Govind Guru	A temperance and purification movement
Oraons (Tana Bhagat)	1914	Jatra Bhagat and other Bhagats	Religious Reason
Chenchus	1921-22	----	British control of forests
Koyas/Rampas	1922-24	Alluri Sitaram Raju	British Rule
Naga	1932	Jadunang (1905-31) and Rani Gaidinliu	A reformist movement later directed against excess of British rule

### Civil Revolts

**Sanyasi (Bengal, 1780)**: led by religious monks against British restrictions and ruin of peasantry.

**Kattabomman Revolt (1792-98)**: by Vira Pandya Kattabomman against imposition of British Suzerainty.

**Paik Revolt (Orissa, 1804-06)**: led by Bakshi Jagabandhu against British occupation and revenue policy.

**Velu Thampi (Travancore, 1805)**: led by Velu Thampi against British extortions.

**Kittur Revolt (Karnataka, 1824)**: by Chinnama and Ryappa against British interference in Kittur.

**Pagal Panthis (Maimansingh, 1825-33)**: by Karam Shah and Tipu. Religious nature.

**Raju (Vizag, 1827)**: by Birabhadra Raju.

**Faraizi (1838)**: by Haji Saraitullah and Dadu Mian for cause of tenants.

**Satavandi (Maharashtra, 1839)**: by Phond Savant and Anna Sahib against British rule.

**Kuka (1840)**: by Bhagat Jawahar Mal or Sian Saheb in Punjab.

**Gadakari (1844)**: against revenue policy in Kolhapur.

**Poligar (Karnool, 1846)**: by Narasimha Reddy.



## 16. Socio-Religious Movements in 19th-20th Centuries

### Socio-Religious Movements and Organisations

Year	Place	Name of Organisation	the Founder
1815	Calcutta	Atmiya Sabha	Rammohan Roy
1828	Calcutta	Brahmo Samaj	Rammohan Roy
1829	Calcutta	Dharma Sabha	Radhakant Dev
1839	Calcutta	Tattvabodhini Sabha	Debendranath Tagore
1840	Punjab	Nirankaris	Dayal Das, Darbara Singh, Rattan Chand etc.
1844	Surat	Manav Dharma Sabha	Durgaram Mancharam
1849	Bombay	Paramhansa Mandli	Dadoba Pandurang
1857	Punjab	Namdharis	Ram Singh
1861	Agra	Radha Swami Satsang	Tulsi Ram
1866	Calcutta	Brahmo Samaj of India	Keshab Chandra Sen
1866	Deoband	Dar-ul-Ulum	Maulana Hussain Ahmed
1867	Bombay	Prarthna Samaj	Atmaram Pandurang
1875	Bombay	Arya Samaj	Swami Dayanand Saraswati
1875	New York (USA)	Theosophical Society	Madam H.P. Blavatsky and Col H.S. Olcott
1878	Calcutta	Sadharan Brahmo Samaj	Anand Mohan Bose
1884	Pune (Poona)	Deccan Education Society	G.G. Agarkar
1886	Aligarh	Muhammadan Educational Conference	Syed Ahmad Khan
1887	Bombay	Indian National Conference	M.G. Ranade
1887	Lahore	Deva Samaj	Shivnarayan Agnihotri
1894	Lucknow	Nadwah-ul-Ulama	Maulana Shibli Numani
1897	Belur	Ramakrishna Mission	Swami Vivekanand
1905	Bombay	Servants of Indian Society	Gopal Krishna Gokhale
1909	Pune (Poona)	Poona Seva Sadan	Mrs Ramabai Ranade and G.K. Devadhar
1911	Bombay	Social Service League	N.M. Joshi
1914	Allahabad	Seva Samiti	H.N. Kunzru

### Important Socio-Religious Reformers

**Swami Sahajanand (1781-1830):** His original name being Gyanashyama, founded the *Swaminarayan sect* in Gujarat, which believed in a theistic God and prescribed a moral code for its followers.

**Raja Rammohan Roy (1772-1833) :** Born in 1772 at Radhanagar in Burdwan district (West Bengal) founded *Atmiya Sabha* in Calcutta in 1815 to propagate monotheism and reforms in the Hindu society. The Atmiya Sabha



was named *Brahmo Sabha* and finally *Brahmo Samaj* in 1828. Launched a movement for the abolition of Sati through his journal *Sabad Kaumudi* (1819).

**Debendranath Tagore (1817-1905)** : Took over the leadership of the Brahmo Samaj after Raja Rammohan Roy. Founded *Tattvabodhini Sabha* in 1839 and published *Tattvabodhini Patrika*, a Bengali monthly to propagate the ideas of Raja Rammohan Roy. In 1859, the Tattvabodhini Sabha was amalgamated with the Brahmo Samaj. He compiled selected passages from the Upanishads, which came to be known as *Brahma Dharma*.

**Keshav Chandra Sen (1838-1884)** : Keshav Chandra Sen was the leader of the Brahmo Samaj during the absence of Debendranath Tagore. He started *Bamabodhini Patrika*, a journal for women. He launched radical reforms, such as giving up of caste names, inter-caste and widow remarriages and launched movement against child marriages. These radical reforms led to the first schism in the Brahmo Samaj. The original Brahmo Samaj came to be known as *Adi Brahmo Samaj* and the other, the *Brahmo Samaj of India* which was established by Keshav Chandra Sen in 1866. Sen formed the *Indian Reform Association* in 1870, which persuaded the British Government to enact the *Native Marriage Act of 1972* (popularly known as *Civil Marriage Act*) legalising the Brahmo marriages and fixing the minimum marriageable age for boys and girls.

**Atmaram Pandurang (1823-1898)** : Atmaram Pandurang founded *Prarthana Samaj* in 1867 in Bombay. M.G. Ranade joined it in 1870.

**Swami Dayanand Saraswati (1824-1883)** : Swami Dayanand Saraswati, originally known as *Mula Shankar* founded the *Arya Samaj* in 1875 in Bombay. wrote *Satyartha Prakash* (in Hindi) and *Veda-Bhashya Bhumika* (partly in Hindi and partly in Sanskrit).

**Blavatsky (1831-91) and Olcott (1832-1907)** : Madam H.P. Blavatsky, a Russian woman and Col. H.S. Olcott, an American, founded the *Theosophical Society* in New York in 1875, but shifted the headquarter of the Society to Adyar near Madras in 1882.

**Swami Vivekanand (1863-1902)** : Swami Vivekanand (originally *Narendranath Dutta*), founded the *Ramakrishna Mission* in 1887 as a social service league which was registered as a Trust in 1897.

### Lower Caste/Caste Movements and Organisations

Movement/Organisation	Year	Place	Founder
Satya Shodhak Samaj	1873	Maharashtra	Jyotiba Phule
Aravippuram Movement	1888	Aravippuram, Kerala	Shri Narayan Guru
Shri Narayan Paripalana Yogam Movement	1902-03	Kerala (S.N.D.P.)	Shri Narayan Guru, Dr. Palpu and Kumaran Asan
The Depressed Class Society	1906	Bombay	V.R. Shinde



Movement/Organisation	Year	Place	Founder
Bahujan Samaj	1910	Satara, Maharashtra	Mukundrao Patil
Justice (Party) Movement	1915-16	Madras, Tamil Nadu	C.N. Mudaliar, T.M. Nair and P. Tyagaraja Chetti
Depressed Class Welfare Institute (Bahiskrit Hitkarini Sabha)	1924	Bombay	B.R. Ambedkar
Self-Respect Movement	1925	Madras, Tamil Nadu	E.V. Ramaswami Naiker 'Periyar'
Harijan Sevak Sangh	1932	Pune	Mahatma Gandhi

## 17. Freedom Struggle

### I. The Revolt of 1857

- The Revolt of 1857 is an important landmark in the history of India which occurred during the governor-generalship of Lord Canning.
- **Causes of the Revolt:** The revolt of 1857 was a combination of political, economic, socio-religious and military causes.

**Political:** Nana Sahib was refused pension, as he was the adopted son of Peshwa Baji Rao II. Avadh was annexed in 1856, on charges of mal-administration. Satara, Jhansi, Nagpur and Sambhalpur were annexed owing to Doctrine of Lapse.

**Economic:** Heavy taxation, forcibly evictions, discriminatory tariff policy against Indian products and destruction of traditional handicrafts that hit peasants and artisans.

**Socio-religious:** British social reforms (abolition of sati, 1829; legalisation of widow remarriage, 1856 etc.) hurt the sentiments of orthodox and conservative people.

**Military:** Discrimination with Indian soldiers.

- **Immediate cause:** The introduction of *Enfield rifles* whose cartridges were said to have a greased cover made of beef and pork sparked off the revolt.
- **The Beginning and Spread of the Revolt:** On March 29, 1857, an Indian sepoy of 34 Native Infantry, *Mangal Pandey*, killed two British officers—*Hughson* and *Baugh*—on parade at Barrackpore (near Calcutta). The Indian soldiers present, refused to obey orders to arrest Mangal Pandey. However, he was later on arrested, put to and hanged.
- The mutiny really started at *Merrut* on 10th May 1857. The occasion was the punishment of some sepoys for their refusal to use the greased cartridges. The soldiers along with other groups of civilians, went on a rampage shouting '*Maro Firangi ko*'. They broke open jails, murdered Europeans, burnt their houses and marched to Delhi after sunset.
- The appearance of the marching soldiers next morning (i.e. 11th May) in Delhi was a signal to the local soldiers, who in turn revolted, seized the city and proclaimed the 82-year old *Bahadur Shah 'Zafar'*, as *Shahenshah-i-Hindustan* (i.e. Emperor of India).



Centre	Beginning Date	Ending Date	Indian Leader	British Suppressor
Delhi	11 May, 1857	20 Sep., 1857	Bahadur Shah 'Zafar' and Bakht Khan (Commanding General)	II John Nicholson
Kanpur	4 June, 1857	6 Dec., 1857	Nana Sahib and his loyal commander Tantiya Tope	Colin Campbell
Lucknow	4 June, 1857	21 Mar., 1858	Begum Hazrat Mahal	Colin Campbell
Jhansi	4 June 1857	18 June, 1858	Rani Laxmi Bai	Huge Rose
Allahabad	5 June, 1857	March, 1858	Liyaqat Ali	Colonel Neil
Jagdishpur (Bihar)	Aug., 1857	Dec., 1858	Kuer Singh and Amar Singh	William Taylor and Vincet Eyre

- Within a month of the capture of Delhi, the revolt spread to the different parts of India (esp. all over the North India, Central India and Western India). South remained quite and Punjab and Bengal were only marginally affected.

#### Note :

1. **Bahadur Shah II** : was Deported to Rangoon, where he died in 1862. His sons were dead; **Nana Sahib** (original name – *Dhundhu Pant*), **Begum Hazrat Mahal** and **Khan Bahadur Khan** : Escaped to Nepal; **Tantiya Tope** (Original name – *Ramchandra Pandurang*) : was captured and executed on 15th April, 1859; **Rani Laxmi Bai** : Died in the battle-field; **Kuer Singh** : was wounded and died on 26 April, 1858.

2. Sir Huge Rose described Laxmi Bai as 'the best and bravest military leader of the rebel'.

3. **Other Important Leaders** : **Khan Bahadur Khan** (Bareilly), **Maulavi Ahmadullah** (Faizabad), **Azimullah Khan** (Fatehpur), **Devi Singh** (Mathura), **Kadam Singh** (Merrut) etc.

4. English authority re-established in India during July-Dec. 1858.

**Causes of Failure** : The Revolt of 1857 was an unsuccessful but heroic effort to eliminate foreign rule. The main causes were : 1. Disunity of Indians and poor organisation 2. Lack of complete nationalism-*Scindias, Holkars, Nizam* and others actively helped the British 3. Lack of coordination between sepoys, peasants, zamindars and other classes 4. Many had different motives for participating in the revolt.

**Significance** : The important element in the revolt lay in Hindu-Muslim unity. People exhibited patriotic sentiment without any touch of communal feelings. It no doubt began as a mutiny of soldiers, but soon turned into a revolt against British rule in general.

#### Nature of the Revolt of 1857

- There are two main views about the nature of the Revolt of 1857 :

1. **Sepoy Mutiny** : Syed Ahmed Khan, Munshi Jeevan Lal and Durgadas Bandyopadhyaya (Contemporary Historians); Stenley (Secretary of state for India), John Lowerence, John Seeley, Malleeson, R.C. Mazumdar.



2. **National Struggle/War of Independence** : Benjamin Disraeli, Karl Marx, V.D. Savarkar, K.M. Pannikar, Ishwari Prasad, A.L. Shrivastva, Tarachand.
- **Other views** : Racial Struggle / Black-White Struggle—*Medley*; Religious Struggle / Hindu-Muslim-Christian Struggle—*Rees*; Civilisation-Barbarism Conflict / English-Indian Conflict—*T.R. Holmes*; Hindu-Muslim Conspiracy against Christian—*Outram and Taylor*.

### Important Books on 1857

#### Book

	Year	Author
The First Indian War of Independence-1857-59	1859	Karl Marx
Causes of Indian Revolt	1873	Sayed Ahmad Khan
The India War of Independence	1909	V.D. Savarkar
The Sepoy Mutiny and the rebellion of 1857	1957	R.C. Mazumdar
Civil Rebellion in Indian Mutinies	1957	S.B. Chowdhury
Rebellion, 1857 : A Symposium	1957	P.C. Joshi
1857	1957	S.N. Sen

### Select Opinions on 1857

- "It was wholly unpatriotic and selfish Sepoy Mutiny with no native leadership and no popular support."  
*John Seeley*
- "The so-called First National War of Independence is neither 'First', nor 'National', nor 'a war of Independence.'"  
*R.C. Mazumdar*
- "A national revolt rooted in deep mistrust."  
*Benjamin Disraeli* (Opposition Leader)
- "The Revolt of 1857 was 'the First war of Independence.'"  
*V.D. Savarkar*
- "What began as a fight for religion ended as a war for independence."  
*S.N. Sen*

### Impact of the Revolt of 1857

1. In August 1858, the British parliament passed an act, which put an end to the rule of the Company. The control of the British government in India was transferred to The British Crown.
2. A minister of the British government, called the Secretary of state for India was made responsible for the governance of India.
3. The British Governor-General of India was now also given the title of Viceroy, who was also the representative of the monarch.
4. Marked the end of British Imperialism and Princely States were assured against annexation. Doctrine of Lapse was withdrawn.
5. After the revolt, the British pursued the policy of '*divide and rule*'.
6. Far-reaching changes were made in the administration and increase of white soldiers in the army.
7. Total expense of the suppression was thrown on the Indian people.
8. It has been said that Julius Caesar was more powerful than Julius Caesar alive. The same may be said about the Revolt of 1857. Whatever might have been its original character, it soon became a symbol of challenge to the mighty British empire in India and remained a shining star for the rise and growth of the Indian national movement.



## 17. II Moderate Phase (1885-1905)

### Important Organisations Before Congress

Organisation	Place	Year	Founder(s)
1. Landholders Society	Calcutta	1837	Dwarkanath Tagore
2. British India Society	London	1839	William Adam
3. British India Association (Result of the merger of 1 and 2)	Calcutta	1851	Devendra Nath Tagore
4. Madras Native Association	Madras	1852	C.Y. Mudaliar
5. Bombay Association	Bombay	1852	Jagannath Shanker Sheth
6. East India Association	London	1866	Dadabhai Naoroji
7. Poona Sarvajanik Sabha	Poona	1870	S.H. Chiplunkar, G.V. Joshi, M.G. Ranade
8. Indian Society	London	1872	Anand Mohan Bose
9. Indian League	Calcutta	1875	Shishir Kumar Ghosh
Indian Association	Calcutta	1876	Surendra Nath Bannerji and Anand Mohan Bose
India National Conference	Calcutta	1883	-do-
10. Madras Mahajan Sabha	Madras	1884	P.Rangia Naydu, V. Raghava- chari, Anand Charlu, G.S. Aiyer
11. Bombay Presidency Association	Bombay	1885	Ferozshah Mehta, K.T. Tailang, Badrudin Tyebji

### Indian National Congress (I.N.C.) : Bombay, 1885, A.O. Hume

- The Indian National Union was formed in 1884 by A.O. Hume, an Englishman and a retired civil servant, in association with various national leaders who called for a conference in Pune in December 1885.
- The conference received the unanimous support of all Indian leaders, but the venue was shifted to Bombay for various reasons (esp. outbreak of cholera in Pune).
- Further, the leaders decided to rename the Indian National Union as Indian National Congress.
- The first session of the Indian National Congress was held at *Gokuldas Tejpal Sanskrit College* in Bombay under the presidentship of *W.C. Bannerji*, a veteran lawyer of Calcutta.
- It was attended by 72 delegates from all over India.
- From 1885 onwards the INC met every year and its cause spread rapidly among middle class Indians.
- With the foundation of INC in 1885, the struggle for India's independence was launched in a small, hesitant and mild but organized manner.
- The first two decade of INC are described in history as those of moderate demands and a sense of confidence in British justice and generosity. Their aim was not to be aggressive for attaining independence lest the



British should suppress this. This resulted in *Indian Council Act* in 1892 which allowed some members to be indirectly elected by Indians but keeping the official majority intact.

➤ **Moderate Leaders:** Dada Bhai Naoroji, A.O. Hume, Badruddin Tayebji, M.G. Ranade, W.C. Bannerji, Ferozshah Mehta, Surendra Nath Bannerji, C. Shankaran Naiyar, Madan Mohan Malviya, V.S. Shrinivas Shastri, Tej Bahadur Sapru, Gopal Krishna Gokhale, Anand Mohan Bose, E. Dinesh Wacha, Ras Bihari Ghosh, Mohan Lal Ghosh, P. Anand Charlu, C.Y. Chintamani, R.C. Dutt, S. Subrahmanyam Aiyer, K.T. Tailang, Madhusudan Das, Rahimtulla M. Sayani.

### Select Opinions about INC

'INC represents only a microscopic minorities.'

*Lord Dufferin (1884-88) (Contemporary Viceroy)*

'The congress is tottering to its fall, and one of my great ambitions, while in India, is to assist it to a peaceful demise.'

*Lord Curzon (1899-1905) (Viceroy)*

'INC is a begging institute.'

*Aurobindo Ghosh (Extremist Leader)*

'INC should distinguished between begging and claiming the rights.'

*Bal Gangadhar Tilak (Extremist Leader)*

'INC playing with bubbles.'

*Bipin Chandra pal (Extremist Leader)*

### 17.III. Extremist Phase (1905-17)

**Reasons for the Emergence of Extremists :** 1. Realization that the true nature of British rule was exploitative 2. International influences and events which demolished the myth of White/European supremacy. These included-Abyssinia/Ethopia's victory over Italy (1896), Boer wars (1899-1902) in which the British faced reverse, Japan victory over Russia (1905) 3. Dissatisfaction with the achievements of Moderates 4. Reactionary policies of Curzon such as Calcutta Cooperation Act (1904), Indian Universities Act (1905) and Partition of Bengal (1905) 5. Existence of a militant school of thought and emergence of a trained leadership.

#### Prominent Extremist Leaders

1. **Bal Gangadhar Tilak :** 'Lokmanya' Tilak was the uncompromising leader of extremists. He was influenced by Agarkar, Ranade and Naoroji. He launched two newspapers the *Kesari* (in Marathi) and the *Maratha* (in English). He Organised *Ganpati Festival* (1893) and *Shivaji Festival* (1895). He was deported to *Mandlay Jail* (Burma) for writing seditious articles. He started *Home Rule League* in 1916. He wrote *Gita Rahasya*. Tilak asserted : '*Swarj is my Birth Right and I will have it.*'
2. **Lala Lajpat Rai :** Extremist from Punjab. Under the influence of Arya Samaj he founded National School at Lahore. He presided over the AITUC in 1920. Boycotted Simon Commission and demonstrated against it at Lahore during which he was brutally assaulted by the police and subsequently succumbed to his injuries.
3. **Bipin Chandra Pal :** Discarded orthodox Hinduism and entered Brahmo Samaj and visited England and America. He founded English



weekly *New India*. He led the Swadeshi movement. He carried <sup>gospels</sup> of Boycott, Swadeshi, National Education, Swaraj and the Passive Resistance. He founded *Vande Matram*.

4. **Sri Aurobindo Ghosh** : He Passed ICS exam with record marks in Greek and Latin. He had European upbringing. He worked for secret societies in Bengal and Maharashtra. He started Bengali daily *Jugantar*. He wrote seditious articles in *Vande Matram*. He was put to trial for Maniktalla (Calcutta) Bomb Conspiracy Case. He finally retired to the life of Yoga at Pondicherry.

**Other Extremist Leaders** : Chakravarthi Viji Raghvachariar, Aswini Kumar Dutta, Raj Narayan Bose, T. Prakasham, Chidambaram Pillai etc.

**Methods of Extremists** : 1. Passive Resistance i.e. non-cooperating with the British Government by boycotting government service, courts, schools and colleges.

2. Promotion of Swadeshi and boycott of foreign goods.

### **The Partition of Bengal (1905) and**

#### **Boycott and Swadeshi Movement (1905-08)**

- The Partition of Bengal came into effect on Oct. 16, 1905, through a Royal Proclamation, reducing the old province of Bengal in size by creating a new province of East Bengal, which later on became East Pakistan and present day Bangladesh.
- The government explained that it was done to stimulate growth of under-developed Eastern region of the Bengal. But, actually, the main objective was to 'Divide and Rule' the most advanced region of the country at that time. The main reason for partition of Bengal was to destroy the political influence of the educated middle class among whom the Bengali intelligentsia were the most prominent. It also set up a communal gulf between Hindus and Muslims. The INC unanimously condemned the partition of Bengal.
- The Boycott and Swadeshi movement had its genesis in the antipartition movement which was started to oppose the British decision to divide Bengal.
- With the start of the Swadeshi movement at the turn of the century, the Indian National Movement took a major leap forward.
- The INC took up the Swadeshi call in Benaras Session, 1905 presided over by G.K. Gokhale and supported the Swadeshi and Boycott Movement of Bengal. Militant nationalism spearheaded by Trio of *Lal-Bal-Pal* (Lala Lajpat Raj, Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Bipin Chandra Pal) and Aurobindo Ghosh was however, in favour of extending the movement to the rest of India and carrying it beyond the programme of just Swadeshi and Boycott of goods to full-fledged political mass struggle.
- On August 7, 1905, a resolution to boycott British goods were adopted at a meeting of the INC held in Calcutta. It was started as a purely economic measure for the development of Indian industry.
- Bonfire of foreign goods was launched on a large scale in all the major cities. *Tilak* took the movement to different parts of India esp. in Pune



and Mumbai. *Ajit Singh* and *Lala Lajpat Ray* spread the Swadeshi message in Punjab and other parts of Northern India. *Syed Haider Raza* set up the agenda in Delhi. Rawalpindi, Kangra, Jammu, Multan and Hardwar witnessed active public participation in Swadeshi Movement. *Chidambaram Pillai* took the movement to Madras Presidency which was also galvanised by *Bipin Chandra pal's* extensive lecture tour.

**Muslim League (1906)** : In Dec., 1906, *All India Muslim League* was set up by *Nawab Salimullah* of Dacca (Dhaka) at Dacca (Dhaka). The League supported the partition of Bengal, opposed the Swadeshi movement, and demanded special safeguards for its community and a separate electorate of Muslims. This led to communal differences between Hindus and Muslims.

**Calcutta session of INC (1906)-Swaraj** : In Dec. 1906 at Calcutta, the INC under the leadership of *Dada Bhai Naoroji* adopted 'Swaraj' as the goal of Indian people. Naoroji in his presidential address declared that the goal of the INC was 'self government of Swaraj like that of United Kingdom'. The differences between the moderates and the extremists, esp. regarding the pace of the movement and the techniques of the struggle to be adopted, came to head in 1907 at the Surat Session of the congress where the party split with serious consequences for the Swadeshi movement.

**Surat Split (1907)** : The INC split into two groups—the extremists and the moderates, at the Surat session in 1907 held on the banks of the river Tapi. The extremists were led by *Tilak*, *Lajpat Rai* and *Bipin Chandra Pal* and the moderates were led by *Gopal Krishna Gokhle*. At the Surat session, the moderate and extremist delegates of congress met in an atmosphere surcharged with excitement and anger.

The suddenness of the Surat fiasco took the extremist leaders by surprise and they offered their cooperation to the working committee of the congress by accepting presidentship of Ras Bihari Ghose. But the moderates would not relent as they found themselves on firm ground. The government observing the opportunity launched a massive attack on the extremists by suppressing the newspaper and arresting their main leader, *Tilak*, and sending him to *Mandalay Jail* (Burma) for 6 years. The extremists were not able to organise an effective alternative party or to sustain the movement. *Aurbindo Ghosh* gave up politics and left for Pondicherry. *Bipin Chandra Pal* also left politics temporarily. *Lajpat Rai* left for Britain. After 1908, the national movement as a whole declined.

**Morley-Minto Reforms (1909)** : Morley-Minto Reforms were introduced in 1909 during the period when *Lord Minto* was the Viceroy of India. The reforms envisaged a separate electorate for Muslims besides other constitutional measures. The government thereby sought to create a rift within the Congress by winning the support of the moderates on the one hand, and favour of Muslims against Hindus on the other. To achieve the latter objective, the reforms introduced the system of separate electorates under which Muslims could only vote for Muslim candidates. This was done to encourage the notion that the political, economic and cultural interests of Hindus and Muslims were separate and not common. Indian political leaders were however dissatisfied by these reforms.



**Home Rule Movement (1915-16) :** B.G. Tilak founded Indian Home Rule League at Pune on 28 April, 1916. Annie Besant, inspired by the Irish rebellion, started Home Rule Movement in India in September, 1916. The movement spread rapidly and branches of the Home Rule League were established all over India. B.G. Tilak wholeheartedly supported this movement. He joined forces with Annie Besant and persuaded the Muslim League to support this programme.

**Lucknow Pact-Congress-League Pact (1916) :** An important step forward in achieving Hindu-Muslim unity was the Lucknow pact (1916). Anti-British feelings were generated among the Muslims following a war between Britain and Turkey which opened the way for the Congress and Muslim League unity. Both the Congress and the Muslim League held session at Lucknow in 1916 and concluded the famous Lucknow pact. The congress accepted the separate electorate and both organisations jointly demanded 'dominion status' for the country.

Hindu-Muslim unity alarmed the British and forced the government to announce its future policy. In 1916, a British policy was announced whereby association of Indians in government increased and there was to be a gradual development of local self-governing institutions.

**Montagu Declaration/August Declaration of 1917 :** The control over the Indian government would be transferred gradually to the Indian people. This was the result of Hindu-Muslim unity exhibited in Lucknow pact.

#### Indian Revolutionary Organisations (India)

Organisation	Place	Year	Founder
Vyayam Mandala	Poona	1896-97	Chapekar Brothers
Mitra Mela	Nasik (Later Poona)	1901	Savarkar Brothers
Anushilan Samiti	Midnapur	1902	Pramath Nath Mitra
Abhinava Bharata	Poona	1904	Vikram Damodar (V.D.) Savarkar
Swadesh Bandhav Samiti	Warisal	1905	Ashwini Kumar Dutta
Anushilan Samiti	Dacca	1907	Pulin Bihari Das
Bharat Mata Society	Punjab	1907	Ajit Singh, Sufi Amba Prasad
Hindustan Republican Association/Army (H.R.A.)	Kanpur	1924	Sachindra Nath Sanyal
Bharat Naujawan Sabha	Lahore	1926	Bhagat Singh
Hindustan Socialist Republican Association/ Army (H.S.R.A.)	Delhi	1928	Chandrashekhar Azad

#### Indian Revolutionary Organisations (Abroad)

Organisation	Place	Year	Founder
India Home Rule Society (India House)	London	1904	Shyamji Krishna Verma



Organisation	Place	Year	Founder
Abhinava Bharat	London	1906	Vikram Damodar Savarkar
Indian Independence League	California (USA)	1907	Tarak Nath Das
Gadar Party	San Fransico	1913	Lala Hardayal
Indian Independence League	Berlin (Germany)	1914	Lala Hardayal and Virendra Nath Chattopadhyaya
Indian Independence League and Government	Kabul	1915	Raja Mahendra Pratap

### Revolutionary Events/Cases

Name of the Event/Case	Place	Year	Accused
Murder of Rand and Amherst (Plague Commissioners)	Poona	1897	Chapekar Brothers, Damodar and Balkrishna.
Attempt to murder Kingsford (a Vindictive Judge)	Muzaffarpur	1908	Khudiram Bose and Prafulla Chaki
Manikatalla (Calcutta) and Alipur Bomb Conspiracy Case (Calcutta) Alipur	Manikatalla, (Calcutta) Alipur	1908	Aurbindo Ghosh
Murder of Jackson (District Magistrate)	Nasik	1909	Anant Karkare
Murder of Curzon Wylie	London	1909	Madan Lal Dhingra
Attempt to murder Hardinge (Viceroy) (Delhi Bomb Case)	Delhi	1912	Ras Bihari Bose and Basant Kumar
Kakori Train Dacoity Case (Kakori-a station in Lucknow-Saharanpur division)	Kakori	1925	Ram prasad Bismil and Ashafaqulla
Murder of Saunders (A.S.P. of Lahore)	Lahore	1928	Bhagat Singh
Assembly Bomb case	Delhi	1929	Bhagat Singh and Batukeshwar Dutta
Chittagong Armoury Dacoity	Chittagong	1930	Surya Sen
Murder of General Dwyer	London	1940	Udham singh

### 17. IV. The Gandhian Era (1917-47)

#### Mahatma Gandhi (1869-1948) : Chronological Overview

##### In South Africa : 1893-1914

- 1893 Departure of Gandhi to South Africa.
- 1894 Foundation of *Natal Indian Congress*.
- 1899 Foundation of *Indian Ambulance Core* during Boer Wars.
- 1904 Foundation of *Indian Opinion* (magazine) and *Phoenix Farm* at Phoenix near Durban.
- 1906 First Civil Disobedience Movement (*Satyagraha*) against Asiatic Ordinance in Transvaal.
- 1907 Satyagraha against Compulsory Registration and Passes for Asians (*The Black Act*) in Transvaal.



- 1908 Trial and imprisonment-Johannesburg Jail (*First Jail Term*).  
 1910 Foundation of *Tolstoy Farm* (Later *Gandhi Ashrama*) near Johannesburg.  
 1913 Satyagraha against derecognition of non Christian marriages in Cape Town.  
 1914 Quits South Africa forever and returns to India, Awarded *Kaisar-i-Hind* for raising an Indian Ambulance Core during Boer wars.

#### In India : 1915-48

- 1915 Arrived in Bombay (India) on 9 Jan, 1915; Foundation of *Satyagraha Ashrama* at Kocharab near Ahmedabad (20 May); In 1917, Ashrama shifted at the banks of Sabarmati; All India tour.  
 1916 Abstain from active politics (though he attended *Lucknow session* of INC held in 26-30 Dec., 1916, where *Raj Kumar Shukla*, a cultivator from Bihar, requested him to come to Champaran.)  
 1917 Gandhi entered active politics with *Champaran campaign* to redress grievances of the cultivators oppressed by Indigo planters of Bihar (*April 1917*). Champaran Satyagraha was his first Civil Disobedience Movement in India.  
 1918 In Feb. 1918, Gandhi launched the struggle in *Ahmedabad* which involved industrial workers. Hunger strike as a weapon was used for the first time by Gandhi during Ahmedabad struggle. In March 1918, Gandhi worked for peasants of *Kheda* in Gujarat who were facing difficulties in paying the rent owing to failure of crops. Kheda Satyagraha was his first Non-Cooperation Movement.  
 1919 Gandhi gave a call for Satyagraha against the *Rowlatt Act* on April 6, 1919 and took the command of the nationalist movement for the first time (First all-India Political Movement). Gandhi returns *Kaisar-i-Hind* gold medal as a protest against *Jallianwala Bagh massacre*-April 13, 1919; *The All India Khilafat Conference* elected Gandhi as its president (*Nov. 1919, Delhi*).  
 1920-22 Gandhi leads the *Non-Cooperation and Khilafat Movement* (*Aug. 1, 1920-Feb., 1922*). Gandhi calls off Movement (*Feb. 12, 1922*), after the violent incident at *Chauri-Chaura* on Feb. 5, 1922. Non-Cooperation Movement was the First mass based politics under Gandhi.  
 1924 *Belgaum (Karnataka) session* of INC-for the first and the last time Gandhi was elected the president of the Congress.  
 1925-27 Gandhi retires from active politics for the first time and devotes himself to 'constructive programme' of the Congress; Gandhi resumes active politics in 1927.  
 1930-34 Gandhi launches the *Civil Disobedience Movement* with his *Dandi march/Salt Satyagraha* (First Phase: March 12, 1930-March 5, 1931; *Gandhi-Irwin Pact*: March 5, 1931; Gandhi attends the *Second Round Table Conference* in London as sole representative of the Congress: Sep. 7 - Dec. 1, 1931; Second Phase: Jan. 3, 1932 - April 17, 1934)  
 1934-39 Gandhi retires from active politics, sets up *Sevagram (Vardha Ashram)*.



- 1939 Gandhi resumes active politics.
- 1940-41 Gandhi launches *Individual Satyagraha Movement*.
- 1942 Call to *Quit India Movement* for which Gandhi raised the slogan, 'Do or Die' (We shall either free India or die in the attempt), Gandhi and all Congress leaders arrested (Aug. 9, 1942).
- 1942-44 Gandhi kept in detention at the *Aga Khan Palace*, near Pune (Aug. 9, 1942 – May, 1944), Gandhi lost his wife *Kasturba* (Feb. 22, 1944) and private secretary *Mahadev Desai*; this was Gandhi's last prison term.
- 1945 Gandhi's influence on the congress wanes perceptively after 1945.
- 1946 Deeply distressed by the orgy of communal violence, as a result Muslim League's Direct Action call, Gandhi travelled to *Noakhali* (East Bengal—now Bangladesh) and later on to *Calcutta* to restore communal peace.
- 1947 Gandhi, deeply distressed by the *Mounbatten Plan/Partition Plan* (June 3, 1947), while staying in Calcutta to restore communal violence, observes complete silence on the dawn of India's Independence (Aug. 15, 1947). Gandhi returns to Delhi (Sep. 1947)
- 1948 Gandhi was shot dead by *Nathu Ram Godse*, a member of RSS, while on his way to the evening prayer meeting at *Birla House*, New Delhi (Jan. 30, 1948). He died, with 'Hey Ram' on his lips.

**Note :** Gandhi has suggested the winding up of Indian National Congress after India attained independence and converting it into Lok Sevak Samaj.

### Facts about Gandhi

**Date and Place of Birth :** Oct. 2, 1869 and Porbandar, Gujarat.

**Note :** UNO declared Oct. 2 as 'International Non-violence Day' (Antarrashtriya Ahinsa Diwas)

**Father :** Karamchand Gandhi, **Mother :** Putali Bai, **Political Guru :** Gopal Krishna Gokhale, **Private Secretary :** Mahadev Desai.

**Literary Influences on Gandhi :** John Ruskin's *Unto This Last*, Emerson, Thoreau, Leo Tolstoy, *the Bible* and *the Gita*.

**Literary Works :** *Hind Swaraj* (1909), *My Experiments with Truth* (Autobiography, 1927)—reveals events of Gandhi's life upto 1922.

**As an Editor :** *Indian Opinion* : 1903-15 (in English and Gujarati, for a short period in Hindi and Tamil), *Harijan* : 1919-31 (in English, Gujarati and Hindi), *Young India* : 1933-42 (in English and Gujarati—named *Navjeevan*)

**Other Names :** *Mahatma* (Saint)—by Rabindranath Tagore, 1917; *Malang Baba/Nanga Faqir* (Naked Saint)—by Kabailis of North-West Frontier, 1930; *Indian Faqir/Traitor Faqir*—by *Winston Churchill*, 1931; *Half-naked Saint* (Ardha Nanga Faqir)—by *Franq Mores*, 1931; *Rashtrapita* (the Father of the Nation)—by *Subhash Chandra Bose*, 1944.



### Main Events during the Gandhian Era

**Rowlatt Act (1919)** : During the viceroyalty of Lord Chelmsford, a sedition committee was appointed by the government in 1918 with Justice *Rowlatt* which made certain recommendations to curb seditious activities in India. The Rowlatt Act 1919, gave unbridled powers to the government to arrest and imprison suspects, without trial. The act caused a wave of anger among the people. Even before the act was passed, popular agitation began against it. Gandhiji decided to fight against this act and he gave a call for Satyagraha on April 6, 1919. He was arrested on April 8, 1919. This led to further intensification of the agitation in Delhi, Ahmedabad and Punjab.

**Jallianwala Bagh Massacre (April 13, 1919)** : The arrest of *Dr. Saifuddin Kitchlu* and *Dr. Satypal* on April 10, 1919, under the Rowlatt Act in connection with Satyagraha caused serious unrest in Punjab. A public meeting was held on April 13, 1919 in a park called *Jallianwala Bagh* in *Amritsar* where thousands of people including women and children assembled. Before the meeting could start General *O'Dyer* ordered indiscriminate heavy firing on the crowd and the people had no way out to escape. As a result hundreds of men, women and children were killed and more than 1200 people wounded. The massacre was a turning point in Indo-British relations and inspired the people to provide a more unrelenting fight for freedom.

**Note** : *Sardar Uddham Singh*, an Indian patriot from Punjab, shot down Gen. *O'Dyer* in London in 1940.

**Khilafat movement (1920-22)** : The Caliph (or, Khalifa) Sultan of Turkey, was looked upon by the Muslims as their religious head. During the first World War, when the safety and welfare of Turkey were threatened by the British thereby weakening the Caliph's position, Indian Muslims adopted an aggressive anti-British attitude. *The Ali Brothers—Mohammad Ali* and *Shaukat Ali*—launched an anti-British movement in 1920—the Khilafat Movement for the restoration of the Khilafat. *Maulana Abul Kalam Azad* also led the movement. It was supported by *Gandhiji* and INC which paved the way for Hindu-Muslim unity.

**Non-Cooperation Movement (1920-22)** : At the *Calcutta session* in Sep. 1920, the Congress resolved in favour of the Non-cooperation Movement and defined *Swarajas its ultimate aim* (according to Gandhi). The movement envisaged : (i) Surrender of titles and honorary offices and resignation from nominated offices; (ii) Refusal to attend government darbars and official functions and boycott of British courts by the lawyers; (iii) Refusal of general public to offer themselves for military and other government jobs, and boycott of foreign goods etc. *Gandhiji*, along with the *Ali Brothers* (of Khilafat Movement fame) undertook a nationwide tour during addressing of meetings. The educational boycott was specially successful in Bengal with Punjab too, responding under the leadership of *Lala Lajpat Rai*. Apart from educational boycott, there was boycott of law courts which saw major lawyers like *Motilal Nehru*, *C.R. Das*, *C. Rajagopalachari*, *Saifuddin Kitchlu*, *Vallabh Bhai Patel*, *Aruna Asaf Ali*, etc. giving up their lucrative practices in their fields. The non-cooperation movement also saw picketings of shops selling foreign cloth and boycott of the foreign cloth by the followers of *Gandhiji*. Another dramatic event during this period was the visit of the



prince of Wales. The day he landed in India (in Bombay on Nov. 17, 1921) he was greeted with empty streets and downed shutters wherever he went.

The attack on a local police station by angry peasants at *Chauri-Chaura*, in Gorakhpur district of UP, on Feb. 5, 1922, changed the whole situation. Gandhi, shocked by Chauri-Chaura incident, withdrew the Non-Cooperation Movement on Feb. 12, 1922.

**Swaraj Party (1923) :** Gandhi's decision to call off the agitation caused frustration among masses. His decision came in for severe criticism from his colleagues like *Motilal Nehru*, *C. R. Das* and *N.C. Kelkar*, who organised the Swaraj Party. The foundations of the Swaraj party were laid on Jan. 1, 1923, as the '*Congress Khilafat-Swaraj Party*'. It proposed then an alternative programme of diverting the movement from widespread civil disobedience programme to restrictive one which would encourage its member to enter into legislative councils (established under Mont-ford Reforms of 1919) by contesting elections in order to wreck the legislature from within and to use moral pressure to compel the authority to concede to the popular demand for self government. In the election held in 1923 the Swaraj Party captured 45 of the 145 seats. In provincial elections they secured few seats but in the Central Province they secured a clear majority. In Bengal, the Swaraj Party was the largest party. They followed the policy of undiluted opposition. The Swarajists demanded the release all the political prisoners, provincial autonomy, repealing of the repressive laws imposed by the government. However, after the death of C.R. Das in 1925 they drifted towards a policy of cooperation with the government. This led to dissension and the party broke up in 1926.

**Simon Commission (1927) :** The activities of the Swaraj Party had induced the British government to review the working of the dyarchy system introduced by the Montague-Chelmsford Reforms of 1919 and to report as to what extent a representative government could be introduced in India. The British government appointed the Simon Commission in Nov., 1927 for the task. All members of this commission were Europeans (Whites). Indian political leaders felt insulted and decided to boycott the commission. Wherever the commission went there were cries of '*Simon Go Back*'. It was while leading a demonstration against the Simon Commission in Lahore that a fatal lathi-blow was dealt to *Lala Lajpat Rai*. It was his death *Bhagat Singh* and his comrades were seeking to avenge when they killed a white police officials, *Saunders*, in Dec. 1928.

**Nehru Committee Report (1928) :** The Committee was set up under the chairmanship of *Motilal Nehru* to determine the principles of the constitution before actually drafting it. The chief architects of the report were *Motilal Nehru* and *Tej Bahadur Sapru*. The recommendation evoked a lively debate concerning the goal of India-Dominion Status or Complete Independence.

**14 Points of Jinnah (March 9, 1929) :** Jinnah, the leader of Muslim League, did not accept the Nehru Report. Jinnah thereafter drew up a list of demands, which was called '14 points of Jinnah'.

**Lahore Session (Dec., 1929) :** At its annual session held in Lahore



in Dec. 1929, under the presidentship of *Jawaharlal Nehru*, the Indian National Congress passed a resolution declaring '*Poorna Swaraj*' (Complete Independence) to be the goal of the national movement.

On Dec. 31, 1929, the newly adopted tricolour flag was unfurled and Jan. 26 was fixed as the Independence Day which was to be celebrated every year, pleading to the people not to submit to British rule any longer.

**Dandi March/Salt Satyagraha (1930)** : To achieve the goal of 'Complete Independence', *Gandhi* launched another civil disobedience movement. Alongwith 78 followers, *Gandhi* started his famous march from *Sabarmati Ashram* on March 12, 1930 for the small village *Dandi* (Navsari District) to break the Salt Law. *Gandhi* covered a distance of 240 miles in 24 days (March 12 – April 5). On reaching the seashore on April 6, he broke the Salt Law by picking up salt from the seashore. By picking a handful of salt, *Gandhi* inaugurated the Civil Disobedience Movement, a movement that was to remain unsurpassed in the history of Indian National Movement for the countrywide mass participation it unleashed. The movement became so powerful that it sparked off patriotism even among the Indian soldiers in the army. The Garhwal soldiers refused to fire on the people at Peshwar. *Gandhi* was arrested on May 5, 1930. This was followed by another round of boycott of foreign goods and it took the shape of a nationwide Civil Disobedience Movement in which ladies also participated. Soon thereafter followed repressive measures such as mass arrests, lathi-charge, police-firing etc. About 1,00,000 people went in jail.

**The First Round Table Conference (1930)** : It was held in London on Nov. 12, 1930, to discuss the Simon Commission, but was totally boycotted by the Indian National Congress. The Commission had proposed self-government in the provinces and federation of British India and the princely states at the Centre. However, the representative of the Muslim League, Liberals and other parties had assembled for the discussion on the commission report. But in absence of the premier political party, the First Round Table Conference had to be adjourned to Jan. 2, 1931.

**Gandhi-Irwin Pact/Delhi Pact (March 5, 1931)** : Early in 1931 two moderate statesman, *Sapru* and *Jayakar*, initiated efforts to bring about rapprochement between *Gandhi* and the government. Six meeting with Viceroy Lord Irwin finally led to the signing of a pact between the two on March 5, 1931, whereby the congress called off the movement and agreed to join the Second Round Table Conference. Regarding *Gandhi-Irwin* Pact *J.L. Nehru* remarks, '*This is the way the worlds ends, / Not with a bang, but a whimper*'.

**The Second Round Table Conference (1931)** : It was held in London during the viceroyalty of *Lord Willingdon* during Sep. – Dec. 1931 and *Gandhi* attended it on behalf of Indian National Congress. Nothing much was expected from the Conference for the imperialist political forces, which ultimately controlled the British Government in London, were opposed to any political or economic concession being given to India which could lead to its independence. The Conference, however, failed as *Gandhi* could not agree with British Prime Minister *Ramsay Mac Donald* on his policy of



in Dec. 1929, under the presidentship of *Jawaharlal Nehru*, the Indian National Congress passed a resolution declaring '*Poorna Swaraj*' (Complete Independence) to be the goal of the national movement.

On Dec. 31, 1929, the newly adopted tricolour flag was unfurled and Jan. 26 was fixed as the Independence Day which was to be celebrated every year, pleading to the people not to submit to British rule any longer.

**Dandi March/Salt Satyagraha (1930)** : To achieve the goal of 'Complete Independence', *Gandhi* launched another civil disobedience movement. Alongwith 78 followers, *Gandhi* started his famous march from *Sabarmati Ashram* on March 12, 1930 for the small village *Dandi* (Navsari District) to break the Salt Law. *Gandhi* covered a distance of 240 miles in 24 days (March 12 – April 5). On reaching the seashore on April 6, he broke the Salt Law by picking up salt from the seashore. By picking a handful of salt, *Gandhi* inaugurated the Civil Disobedience Movement, a movement that was to remain unsurpassed in the history of Indian National Movement for the countrywide mass participation it unleashed. The movement became so powerful that it sparked off patriotism even among the Indian soldiers in the army. The Garhwal soldiers refused to fire on the people at Peshwar. *Gandhi* was arrested on May 5, 1930. This was followed by another round of boycott of foreign goods and it took the shape of a nationwide Civil Disobedience Movement in which ladies also participated. Soon thereafter followed repressive measures such as mass arrests, lathi-charge, police-firing etc. About 1,00,000 people went in jail.

**The First Round Table Conference (1930)** : It was held in London on Nov. 12, 1930, to discuss the Simon Commission, but was totally boycotted by the Indian National Congress. The Commission had proposed self-government in the provinces and federation of British India and the princely states at the Centre. However, the representative of the Muslim League, Liberals and other parties had assembled for the discussion on the commission report. But in absence of the premier political party, the First Round Table Conference had to be adjourned to Jan. 2, 1931.

**Gandhi-Irwin Pact/Delhi Pact (March 5, 1931)** : Early in 1931 two moderate statesman, *Sapru* and *Jayakar*, initiated efforts to bring about rapprochement between *Gandhi* and the government. Six meeting with Viceroy Lord Irwin finally led to the signing of a pact between the two on March 5, 1931, whereby the congress called off the movement and agreed to join the Second Round Table Conference. Regarding Gandhi-Irwin Pact *J.L. Nehru* remarks, '*This is the way the worlds ends, /Not with a bang, but a whimper*'.

**The Second Round Table Conference (1931)** : It was held in London during the viceroyalty of *Lord Willingdon* during Sep. – Dec. 1931 and *Gandhi* attended it on behalf of Indian National Congress. Nothing much was expected from the Conference for the imperialist political forces, which ultimately controlled the British Government in London, were opposed to any political or economic concession being given to India which could lead to its independence. The Conference, however, failed as *Gandhi* could not agree with British Prime Minister *Ramsay Mac Donald* on his policy of



communal representation and refusal of the British government on the basic Indian demand for freedom. The conference closed on Dec. 1, 1931, without any concrete result.

**The Communal Award/Mac Donald Award (Aug. 16, 1932) :** While Gandhi was arrested on his return from London after the Second Round Table Conference, British Prime Minister *Ramsay Mac Donald* announced his Award on communal representation in Aug. 16, 1932. Besides containing provisions for representation of Muslims, Sikhs and Europeans, it envisaged communal representation of Depressed Classes also. Gandhi was deeply grieved by this and underwent a fast in protest against this Award since it aimed to divide India on a communal basis. While many political Indians saw the fast as a diversion from the ongoing political movement, all were deeply concerned and emotionally shaken. Almost everywhere in India mass meetings took place, political leaders of different persuasions, like *Madan Mohan Malviya*, *B. R. Ambedkar* and *M. C. Raja* became active. In the end they succeeded in hammering out an agreement, known as the Poona Pact.

**Poona Pact/Gandhi-Ambedkar Pact (Sep. 25, 1932) :** As discussed, the Communal Award created immense dissatisfaction among Hindus. Gandhi who was on fast in protest staked his life to get the Award repudiated. According to the pact, the idea of separate electorate for the Depressed Classes was abandoned but seats reserved for them in the provincial legislatures were increased from 71 in the Award to 147, and in the central legislature to 18% of the total. Ultimately the fast ended with the *Poona Pact* which annulled the Award. The leaders of the various groups and parties among Hindus, and *B.R. Ambedkar* on behalf of the *harijans*, signed the pact. The Poona Pact between caste Hindus and the Depressed Classes agreed upon a joint electorate.

**The Third Round Table Conference (Nov. 17–Dec. 24, 1932) :** It was held in 1932 but again proved fruitless since the national leaders were in prison.

**The Government of India Act, 1935 :** The Simon Commission report submitted in 1930 formed the basis for the Government of India Act, 1935. The new Government of India Act received the royal assent on Aug. 4, 1935. The Act continued and extended all the existing features of earlier constitutional reforms. But in addition there were certain new principles introduced. It provided for a federal type of government. Thus, the act : (i) Introduced provincial autonomy (ii) Abolished dyarchy in provinces (iii) Made ministers responsible to the legislative and federation at the centre. The Act of 1935 was condemned by nearly all sections of Indian public opinion and was unanimously rejected by the Congress. The Congress demanded itself the convening of a Constituent Assembly elected on the basis of adult franchise to frame a constitution for an independent India. Regarding the Government of India Act, 1935 J. L. Nehru remarks, '*It was a new charter of Slavery.*'

Although the Congress opposed the Act, yet it contested the elections when the constitution was introduced on April 1, 1937; and formed ministries, first in 6 provinces and then in another 2. The Muslim League was however,



not happy with the Congress rule, esp. Mr. Jinnah, who described it in those words: '*Congress was drunk with power and was oppressive against Muslims*'.

**Congress Ministries Resign (Dec. 22, 1939)** : The Second World War broke out in Europe on Sep. 3, 1939 that brought Britain also within its fold. Without consulting the Indian leaders, the Viceroy declared India also as a belligerent country. This evoked sharp criticism from Indians and the Congress took the stand that India could not associate herself in a war said to be for democratic freedom when the very freedom was denied to her. The Congress demanded that India should be declared an independent nation. Then only would the country help Britain in the war. The Viceroy in his reply dated Oct. 17, 1939 rejected the Congress demand as impracticable and took the stand that the Government could think over the entire constitutional scheme after the war. The Congress condemned the Viceroy's reply and the Congress ministries everywhere resigned on Dec. 22, 1939. *Jinnah* was happy over this and he called upon the Indian Muslims to celebrate the resigning day of Congress ministries as '*the day of deliverance*'.

**Pakistan Resolution/Lahore Resolution (March 24, 1940)** : It was in 1930 that *Iqbal* suggested the union of the Frontier Province, Baluchistan, Sindh and Kashmir as Muslim state within the federations. This proved to be a creative idea which germinated during the early thirties to burst into vigorous life with the advent of the new reforms. The idealist *Chaudhry Rehmat Ali* developed this conception at Cambridge, where he inspired a group of young Muslims and invented the term '*Pakstan*' (later '*Pakistan*') in 1935. His ideas seemed visionary during that time, but within 7 years they turned into a political programme by *Jinnah* with the new name as its slogan or banner. The ideology of *Iqbal*, the vision of *Rehamat Ali*, and the fears of Muslims were thus united by the practical genius of *Jinnah* to bind Muslim together as never before during the British period and ultimately led to the vivisection of India and creation of Pakistan. Pakistan Resolution was an important landmark in this context. The *Lahore session* of the Muslim League, held on March 24, 1940, passed *Pakistan Resolution* and rejected the Federal scheme as envisaged in the government of India Act, 1935.

**August Offer/Linlithgow Offer (Aug. 8, 1940)** : On Aug. 8, 1940, the Viceroy *Linlithgow* came out with certain proposals, known as *August Offer* declaring that the goal of British Government was to establish *Dominion Status* in India. It accepted that framing of a new constitution would be the responsibility of the Indians. It also laid down that full weight would be given to the views of minorities in the constitution. *Maulana Abul Kalam Azad*, President of the Congress, rejected the August Offer which aimed at bringing the Congress in the ongoing world war. The Muslim League, however welcomed the offer as it ensured that no further constitution would be adopted without the prior approval of Muslims. The League declared that the most difficult problem of India's future constitution could be solved only by the partition of India. In brief, the August Offer failed in gaining Indian's co-operation for war and, in fact, further widened the gulf between the Congress and the Britishers as well as between the Congress and the Muslim League.



**Individual Civil Disobedience/Individual Satyagraha (Oct., 1940 – Dec., 1941)** : The Congress Working Committee decided to start individual civil disobedience on Oct. 17, 1940. *Vinoba Bhave* was the first Satyagrahi who was arrested on Oct. 21, followed soon by many more including *Nehru* and *Patel*. But the movement created little enthusiasm and Gandhi suspended it.

**The Cripps Mission (March-April 1942)** : In 1942, the British Government realized that it could not ignore the Indian problems any more. As a result of the World War, the situation worsened for the British with Japanese advance towards Indian borders. By March 7, 1942, Rangoon fell and Japan occupied the entire South-East Asia. The British government, with a view of getting cooperation from Indians, sent *Sir Stafford Cripps*, a member of the British cabinet to India to settle terms with Indian leaders who were forthwith released. Cripps proposed *Dominion Status* after the war but his proposal was rejected by all the political leaders. As no party agreed to accept these proposals, the Cripps Mission ended in failure. Regarding the Cripps Mission proposals Mahatma Gandhi remarks '*A post-dated cheque on a crumbling bank*'.

**Quit India movement (1942)** : On Aug. 8, 1942, the Congress in its meeting at *Gowalia Tank, Bombay* passed a resolution known as 'Quit India' resolution, whereby *Gandhi* asked the British to quit India and gave a call for '*Do or die*' (We shall either free India or die in the attempt) to his countrymen. On Aug. 9, 1942 all the prominent leaders like Gandhi, Nehru, Patel etc. were arrested but the rest most of (J.P., Lohiya, Aruna Ashaf Ali, Usha Mehta etc.) continued the revolutionary struggle. Violence spread throughout the country, several government offices were destroyed and damaged, the telegraph wires were cut and communication paralyzed. Parallel government were established in some places viz. 1. *Balia*, U.P. (by Chittu Pandeya) – first Parallel govt. 2. *Tamulak*, Midnapur Distt., Bengal (by Satis Samant) 3. *Satara*, Maharashtra (by Y. B. Chahvan and Nana Patil) – the longest (term) parallel govt. 4. *Talchar*, Orissa. The movement was, however, crushed by the government.

**Gandhi's Fast (Feb. 10 – March 7, 1943)** : Gandhi undertook a 21-day fast in jail. His condition deteriorated after 13 days and all hopes of his survival were given up. However, as a result of his moral strength and spiritual stamina, he survived and completed the 21-day fast. This was his answer to the government which had been constantly exhorting him to condemn the violence of the people in the Quit India Movement. Gandhi not only refused to condemn people resorting to violence but unequivocally held the government responsible for it.

**C.R. Formula (1944)** : In 1944, *Chakravarti Rajagopalachari (C.R.)* proposed to appoint a commission to demarcate the districts in North-West and East where Muslims were in majority. In such areas, a plebiscite was proposed to be held on the basis of adult suffrage to decide the issue of separation. They would be given freedom if they favoured a sovereign state. In case of acceptance of partition, agreement was to be made jointly for safeguarding defence, commerce, communications etc. Muslim League was to endorse Congress demand for independence and cooperate in



the formation of provisional government. *Jinnah* objected, as he wanted Congress to accept two-nation theory and wanted only Muslims of the North-West and East of India to vote in the plebiscite. Hindu Leaders led by *V.D. Savarkar* condemned the plan.

**Wavell Plan and Shimla Conference (June 14–July 14, 1945)** : The war situation in Europe improved in the beginning of the year 1945. India's goodwill was, however, needed as the war against Japan was expected to last for about two years. The situation within the country was worsening day by day as a result of deteriorating economic situation and famines. The British Government was compelled to come forward with some sort of plan to satisfy the Indians. After consultations with the British Government on the Indian problem, *Lord Wavell*, the Viceroy of India, issued a statement known as *Wavell Plan*. The Plan, which chiefly concerned Viceroy's Executive Council, proposed certain changes in the structure of the council. One of the main proposals was that the Executive Council would be constituted giving a balanced representation to the main communities in it, including equal representation to Muslims and Hindus.

Soon after the Wavell Plan was issued the members of the Congress Working Committee were released from jails. A conference of 22 prominent Indian leaders called at Shimla to consider the Wavell Plan, reached no decision. What scuttled the conference was Mr. Jinnah's unflinching stand that the Muslim members approved only by the Muslim League should be included in the Executive Council. Communalism thus again became a stumbling block. For the Britishers, however, the dissension between the Congress and the Muslim League was a source of happiness.

**INA Trial (Nov., 1945)** : *P. K. Sehgal*, *Shah Nawaj Khan* and *Gurubaksh Singh Dhillon* were put on trial at the Red Fort in Nov., 1945. To elucidate, despite the best efforts of the Congress to win the legal battle the trial of INA prisoners led to their outright conviction on the charge of waging war against the King Emperor. The pressure of the Indian public opinion against this conviction however, soon mounted high. This shook the British Government and it was compelled to suspend the sentences imposed on the INA convicts. Further, disaffection spread fast among the soldiers. The chief defence advocate during the INA trial was *Bhulabhai Desai*. Other defence lawyers were *Tej Bahadur Sapru*, *Jawaharlal Nehru*, *Asaf Ali* and *Md. Ali Jinnah*.

### **Azad Hind Fauj (Indian National Army –INA)**

The Japanese after defeating the British in South-East Asia, took a number of Indian soldiers as prisoners of war. In March 1942 a conference of Indians was held in Tokyo, and they formed the *Indian Independence League*. At the Bangkok conference (June 1942) *Ras Bihari Bose* was elected President of the League. INA was formed by *Mohan Singh*.

*Subhas Chandra Bose* had escaped to Berlin in 1941 and set up Indian League there. In July 1943, he joined the INA at Singapore. There *Ras Bihari Bose* handed over the leadership to him.

*Provisional Government of Free India* and INA was formed by *Subhas Chandra Bose* in Singapore on Oct. 21, 1943.



INA had 3 fighting brigades named after *Subhas*, *Gandhi* and *Nehru*. *Rani Jhansi Brigade* was an exclusive women force.

But with the defeat of Japan in 1945, the INA also died out.

Bose is said to have been killed in air crash over Taipei, Taiwan on his way to Tokyo in Aug. 18, 1945.

**Royal Indian Navy (RIN)/Ratings Mutiny (Feb. 18, 1946)** : On Feb., 18, 1946, Bombay Ratings of HMS Talwar struck work due to flagrant racial discrimination, unpalatable food and abuse after the arrest of B.C. Dutt who had scrawled Quit India on the ship. On Feb. 19, HMS Hindustan, in Karachi also mutinied. *VallabhBhai Patel* and *Jinnah* jointly persuaded the Ratings to surrender on Feb. 23, 1946. The Britishers for the first time seriously realized that with this awakening among the Indians and revolt in armed forces, it could not perpetuate its hold on India any more.

**Cabinet Mission (March - June, 1946)** : The British Prime Minister, *Lord Attlee*, made a declaration on March 15, 1946, that British Cabinet Mission would visit India to make recommendations regarding constitutional reforms to be introduced in India. The Cabinet Mission which included of *Lord Pathick Lawrence*, *Stafford Cripps* and *A. V. Alexander* visited India and met the representative of different political parties, but a satisfactory solution to the constitutional difficulties could not be found. The mission envisaged the establishment of a Constituent Assembly to frame the constitution as well as an interim government. The Muslim League accepted the plan on June 6, 1946, while maintaining its rights of striving for a separate Muslim state. The Congress also partially accepted the plan.

**Direct Action Campaign (Aug. 16, 1946)** : Provoked by the success of the Congress (in the voting for Constituent Assembly), the Muslim League launched a 'direct action' campaign on Aug. 16, 1946, which resulted in wide spread communal riots in the country.

**Interim Government (Sep. 2, 1946)** : On Sep. 2, 1946, an interim government was formed. Congress members led by *Pt. Jawaharlal Nehru* joined it but the Muslim League did not, on the contrary it withdrew its earlier acceptance of the Cabinet Mission Plan.

**Formation of Constituent Assembly (Dec. 9, 1946)** : The Constituent Assembly met on Dec. 9, 1946, and *Dr. Rajendra Prasad* was elected its President. The Muslim League did not join the Assembly.

**Attlee's Announcement (Feb. 20, 1947)** : On Feb. 20, 1947, British Prime Minister *Attlee* announced that the British would withdraw from India by June 30, 1948 and that Lord Mountbatten would replace Wavell.

**Mountbatten Plan (June 3, 1947)** : In March, 1947, *Lord Mountbatten* replaced Lord Wavell. He announced his plan on June 3, 1947. His earlier *Plan Balkan* was abandoned for this June 3, Plan. It offered a key to the political and constitutional deadlock created by the refusal of Muslim League to join the Constituent Assembly formed to frame the constitution of India. Mountbatten's formula was to divide India but retain maximum unity. The country would be partitioned but so would be Punjab and Bengal, so that the limited Pakistan that emerged would meet both the Congress and the



League's position to some extent. The League's position on Pakistan was conceded in that it would be created, but the Congress position on unity would be taken into account to make Pakistan as small as possible. He laid down detailed principles for the partition of the country and speedy transfer of political powers in the form of dominion status to the newly formed dominions of India and Pakistan. Its acceptance by the Congress and the Muslim League resulted in the birth of Pakistan.

**The Indian Independence Act, 1947:** The Bill containing the provisions of the Mountbatten Plan of June 3, 1947, was introduced in the British Parliament and passed as the Indian Independence Act, 1947. The Act laid down detailed measures for the partition of India and speedy transfer of political powers to the new governments of India and Pakistan.

**Integration of States:** By Aug. 15, 1947, all states except *Kashmir*, *Junagadh* and *Hyderabad* had signed the Instrument of Accession with India. *The Maharaja of Kashmir* acceded to India in Oct., 1947 when irregular Pakistani troops invaded his state. *The Nawab of Junagadh* was a Muslim whereas most of its people were Hindus. In Feb. 1948, through a referendum the people of this state decided to join India. The Nawab of Junagadh, therefore, left for Pakistan. *The Nizam of Hyderabad* was forced to accede to the Indian Union under the pressure of internal anarchy and military action against him in Sep., 1948.

**French Colonies:** By the end of 1954, French colonial rule in Pondicherry, Chandranagar, Mahe, Karaikal and Yanam came to an end. These territories were integrated with India.

**Portuguese Colonies:** The Portuguese colonies in India were Goa, Daman, Diu, Dadra and Nagar Haveli. In 1954, Dadra and Nagar Haveli were liberated by freedom fighters. Indian troops liberated Goa, Daman and Diu from the Portuguese in 1961.

## Miscellaneous Important Dates

### I. Ancient

#### BC

2500 - Indus Valley Civilization.

1750

563-483 Buddha's life-span.

540-468 Mahavir's life-span.

327-326 Alexander's invasion of India. It opened a land route between India and Europe.

322 Accession of Chandragupta Maurya.

305 Defeat of Seleucus at the hands of Chandragupta Maurya.

273-232 Ashoka's reign.

261 Conquest of Kalinga.

145-101 Reign of Elara, the Chola king of Sri Lanka.

58 Beginning of Vikram era.



**AD**

- 78 Beginning of Saka era.
- 78-101 Kanishka's reign.
- 319-320 Commencement of Gupta era.
- 380 Accession of Chandragupta II 'Vikramaditya'.
- 405-411 Visit of Chinese traveller Fahien.
- 415 Accession of Kumaragupta I
- 455 Accession of Skandagupta.
- 606-647 Harshavardhan's reign.

**II. Medieval**

- 712 First invasion in Sindh by Arabs (Mod. Bin Qasim).
- 836 Accession of King Bhoja of Kannauj.
- 985 Accession of Rajaraja, the Chola ruler.
- 998 Accession of Sultan Mahmud Ghazni.
- 1001 First invasion of India by Mahmud Ghazni who defeated Jaipal, ruler of Punjab.
- 1025 Destruction of Somnath Temple by Mahmud Ghazni.
- 1191 First Battle of Tarain.
- 1192 Second Battle of Tarain.
- 1206 Accession of Qutubuddin Aibak to the throne of Delhi.
- 1210 Death of Qutubuddin Aibak.
- 1221 Chengiz Khan invaded India (Mongol invasion)
- 1236 Accession of Razia Sultana to the throne of Delhi.
- 1240 Death of Razia Sultana.
- 1296 Accession of Alauddin Khilji.
- 1316 Death of Alauddin Khilji.
- 1325 Accession of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq.
- 1327 Transfer of Capital from Delhi to Devagiri (Daulatabad) in Deccan by the Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq.
- 1336 Foundation of Vijayanagar empire in the South.
- 1351 Accession of Firoz Shah Tughlaq.
- 1398 Timur's Invasion of India.
- 1469 Birth of Guru Nanak.
- 1494 Accession of Babur in Farghana.
- 1497-98 First voyage of Vasco da Gama to India (discovery of sea route to India via the Cape of Good Hope)
- 1526 First Battle of Panipat; Babur defeated Ibrahim Lodhi; foundation of Mughal dynasty by Babur.
- 1527 Battle of Khanwa—Babur defeated Rana Sanga.



- 1530 Death of Babur and accession of Humayun.
- 1539 Sher Shah Suri defeated Humayun in the battle of Chausa and became India's emperor.
- 1555 Humayun recaptured the throne of Delhi.
- 1556 Second Battle of Panipat (Akbar defeated Hemu).
- 1556 Battle of Talikota (Rakshasa-Tangadi).
- 1576 Battle of Haldighati—Rana Pratap was defeated by Akbar.
- 1582 Din-i-Ilahi founded by Akbar.
- 1600 English East India Company established.
- 1605 Death of Akbar and accession of Jahangir.
- 1606 Execution of Guru Arjun Dev, the 5th Guru of Sikhs.
- 1611 Jahangir marries Nurjahan.
- 1615 Sir Thomas Roe visits Jahangir.
- 1627 Birth of Shivaji and death of Jahangir.
- 1628 Shahjahan becomes emperor of India.
- 1631 Death of Mumtazmahal.
- 1634 The English permitted to trade in India (in Bengal)
- 1659 Accession of Aurangzeb, Shahjahan imprisoned.
- 1665 Shivaji imprisoned by Aurangzeb.
- 1666 Death of Shahjahan.
- 1675 Execution of Guru Teg Bahadur, the 9th Guru of Sikhs.
- 1680 Death of Shivaji.
- 1707 Death of Aurangzeb.
- 1708 Death of Guru Gobind Singh, the 10th Guru of Sikhs.
- 1739 Nadir Shah invades India.

### III. MODERN

- 1757 Battle of Plassey, establishment of British political rule in India at the hands of Lord Clive.
- 1761 Third Battle of Panipat.
- 1764 Battle of Buxar.
- 1765 Clive appointed Company's Governor in India.
- 1767-69 First Anglo-Mysore War.
- 1780 Birth of Maharaja Ranjit Singh.
- 1780-84 Second Anglo-Mysore War.
- 1784 Pitt's India Act.
- 1790-92 Third Anglo-Mysore War.
- 1793 The Permanent Settlement of Bengal.
- 1799 Fourth Anglo-Mysore War—Death of Tipu Sultan.



- 1802 Treaty of Bassein.
- 1809 Treaty of Amritsar.
- 1829 Practice of Sati prohibited.
- 1830 Raja Rammohan Roy visits England.
- 1833 Death of Raja Rammohan Roy at Bristol, England.
- 1839 Death of Maharaja Ranjit Singh.
- 1839-42 First Anglo-Afghan War.
- 1845-46 First Anglo-Sikh War.
- 1852 Second Anglo-Burmese War.
- 1853 First Railway line opened between Bombay and Thane and a Telegraph line in Calcutta.
- 1857 The Sepoy Mutiny or First War of Independence.
- 1861 Birth of Rabindranath Tagore.
- 1869 Birth of Mahatma Gandhi.
- 1885 Foundation of Indian National Congress.
- 1889 Birth of Jawaharlal Nehru.
- 1897 Birth of Subhash Chandra Bose.
- 1903 Tibet Expedition (Young Husband delegation).
- 1905 Partition of Bengal by Lord Curzon.
- 1906 Foundation of Muslim League by Salimullah (Nawab of Dhaka) at Dhaka.
- 1911 Delhi Darbar, King and Queen visit India; Delhi becomes the capital of India.
- 1914 World War I begins.
- 1916 Lucknow Pact signed by Muslim League and Congress.
- 1918 World War I ends.
- 1919 Montague-Chelmsford Reforms introduced, Jallianwala Bagh massacre at Amritsar.
- 1920 Khilafat Movement launched.
- 1927 Boycott of Simon Commission, broadcasting started in India.
- 1928 Death of Lala Lajpat Rai.
- 1929 Resolution of 'Poorna Swaraj' (complete independence) passed at Lahore Session of INC.
- 1930 Civil disobedience movement launched, Dandi March by Mahatma Gandhi (April 6, 1930).
- 1931 Gandhi-Irwin Pact.
- 1935 Government of India Act.
- 1937 Provincial Autonomy, Congress forms ministries.
- 1939 World War II begins (September 3).



- 1941    Escape of Subhash Chandra Bose from India, Death of Rabindranath Tagore.
- 1942    Arrival of Cripps Mission in India, Quit India movement launched (August 8).
- 1943-44    S.C. Bose forms Provisional Government of Free India and Indian National Army in Singapore; Bengal famine.
- 1945    Trial of Indian National Army at Red Fort; Shimla Conference; World War II ends.
- 1946    British Cabinet Mission visits India; Interim government formed at the Centre.
- 1947    Division of India; India & Pakistan form separate independent dominions.

### Important Places

**Ahichhatra** : Originally *Ahikshetra* in Bareilly district of Uttar Pradesh was once the capital of Panchalas.

**Aihole** : In Karnataka contains chief sites of Chalukyan architecture—nearly 70 structural stone temples important in the development of Hindu architecture and sculpture.

**Ajanta Caves** : 66 miles north of Aurangabad in Maharashtra State. These are rock-cut Buddhist caves, 29 in number. These caves represent a record of unique painting, sculpture and architecture of the period from about the 2nd century B.C. to about 7th century A.D.

**Amaravati** : It is the legendary capital of Svarga. Also a historical site near modern Vijaywada, believed to have flourished under the Satavahana dynasty.

**Arikamedu** : It was a sea-port near Pondicherry in Chola times.

**Ayodhya** : A few miles from modern Faizabad, near Lucknow, was capital of the Kosala and the Solar kings of ancient India. Rama was the most prominent among them.

**Badami (or Vatapi)** : In Karnataka is well-known for Chalukyan sculpture found in the cave temples here. These are groups of Hindu temples dating back to 7th or 8th century and are examples of pure Dravidian architecture. Besides cave temples and rock-cut pillared halls, there is also the famous Malegitti Shivalaya temple.

**Belur** : In Karnataka is famous for its elaborately sculptured Cheena Kesava temple of the Hoysala period.

**Bhubaneswar** : In Orissa is known for ancient temples viz., Rajarani; Lingraja; Brahmesvara.

**Bodh Gaya** : It is situated 6 miles south of Gaya in Bihar State on the western bank of the Falgu river and connected by two metalled roads. It is famous as the place where Buddha got enlightenment. There are modern monasteries, rest houses and museum.

**Chidambaram** : A town 150 miles south of Chennai known as Tillai in ancient time, was once the capital of the Chola kingdom. Its temples



are among the oldest in India and are gems of Dravidian architecture. It is famous as the abode of Natraja, the Dancing Shiva.

**Daulatabad** : Near Aurangabad in Maharashtra State is famous for rock-cut fortress of 12th century of near the tomb of the Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb.

**Elephanta Caves** : On the island of the same name about 6 miles from Mumbai harbour are rock-cut caves of the 7th and 8th century. The name Elephanta is due to the Portuguese, who were apparently struck by the stone elephants which were once found in the landing place.

**Ellora Caves** : About 15 miles north-west of Aurangabad in Maharashtra State are about 34 caves excavated in the face of a hill.

**Fatehpur Sikri** : 23 miles from Agra in Uttar Pradesh was the city founded by **Akbar** in 1571 but abandoned soon after. The place contains a number of places, shrines, mosques. The most notable among them is Buland Darwaza, 176 feet high and built to commemorate the conquest of Gujarat.

**Halebid** : In Karnataka, 10 miles from Belur, is well-known for its elaborately sculptured temples of the Hoysala period. The monuments rank among the masterpieces of Hindu art.

**Hampi** : In Karnataka, 9 miles from Hospet railway station, is the ruined capital of the Vijayanagar Empire.

**Harappa** : In Montgomery district of Punjab, now in West Pakistan, is known for excavations carried out here showing signs of Indus Valley Civilization.

**Junagadh** : In Gujarat State is one of the most ancient cities of India. It is situated below the Girnar Hill. The temples on the Hill are known for their architecture and paintings.

**Kalibangan** : In Hanumangarh district of Rajasthan where excavations brought to light the varied achievements of Indus Valley Civilisation—town planning and use of burnt bricks.

**Kannauj** : Capital of Harshavardhana.

**Kanchipuram** : Or the "Golden City", 45 miles south-west of Chennai is known for Kailashnath temple. It was the capital of successive dynasties of Hindu rulers.

**Kanheri** : 20 miles from Mumbai is known for its Buddhist caves dating back to the 1st century A.D.

**Kanyakubja** : Or modern Kannauj is an ancient city. It was the cultural centre of northern India from the seventh century to the time when the Muslims came.

**Kapilvastu** : A small ancient kingdom in the north of India; associated with Mahatma Buddha.

**Khajuraho** : In Chhattarpur in Madhya Pradesh is famous for its group of highly ornate mediaeval Hindu temples.

**Kusinagar** : In the district of modern Deoria, is the place where *Buddha* died.



**Lothal** : Ancient town, situated on the sea-plain of former Saurashtra, 450 miles south-east of Mohenjodaro. The excavation made here represent the Indus Valley Civilization.

**Madurai** : Popularly known as the "City of Festivals", was till the 14th century the capital of the Pandyan kingdom which had sea-borne trade with Rome and Greece. It is famous for Minakshi temple.

**Mammalapuram** (now **Mahabalipuram**) : Situated 53 miles from Chennai, it is known for rock-cut temples, monolithic figures and carvings of the 7th and 8th centuries A.D. The chief points of interest here are the Five Rathas or temples modelled as chariots—"Arjuna Ratha", "Draupadi Ratha", "Dharamraja Ratha" etc. Also famous for Shore temple.

**Mandu** : In Madhya Pradesh. It is one of the largest mediaeval city sites. It has extensive remains—fortifications and palaces—a synthesis of Hindu and Muslim styles in architecture and painting; Jama Masjid (of Mandu).

**Mithila** : It was the home of the three scholar sages—**Gargi**, **Maitreya** and **Kapila**. It was the capital town of **Raja Janak's** territory.

**Mohenjodaro** : In the Larkana district of Sindh (now in Pakistan) is the site of excavation revealing Indus Valley Civilization.

**Nalanda** : In Bihar was the seat of an ancient Buddhist University. It contains a group of Buddhist temples and monasteries.

**Palitana** : In Saurashtra is famous for its holly hill **Shatrunjaya**. It is the most sacred place for Shvetambara Jains.

**Pandharpur** : It is in Sholapur district (Maharashtra State). It stands on Bhima river and is one of the most sacred places of pilgrimage in the State.

**Prabhaspatan** (or **Somnath**) : In Gujarat State is the site of the famous Somnath temple which was destroyed by **Mahmud Ghazni**.

**Pragjyotishpur** : Was the capital of an ancient tribal kingdom in Kamarupa or modern Assam.

**Rajgir** : 8 miles south-west of Nalanda by road is an important place of pilgrimage for Buddhists. It was the capital of **Bimbisara** in ancient times. The **Buddha** preached at Rajgir, and so did **Mahavira**, the great preceptor of the Jains.

**Sanchi** : In Madhya Pradesh is famous for the largest and the most well-preserved Buddhist Stupa (108-foot in diameter and 42-foot in height).

**Sarnath** : Near Varanasi is the place where the **Buddha** delivered his first sermon after he became the "Enlightened One". The place is known for Buddhist temples and remains.

**Seringapatam** : In Karnataka was the ancient capital of **Tipu Sultan**. (Now known as Seringapatnam.)

**Somnathpuram** : In Karnataka is known for temples of Hoysala period. Kesava temple.

**Sravanbelgola** : In Karnataka is famous for its Jain temples and the colossal statue of **Gomateswara (Babubali)**—65-foot high erected in A.D. 983, the tallest monolithic in the world.



**Srirangam** : An island on the Cauvery river two miles north of Tiruchirapalli. It contains one of the largest temples in south India of the Vijayanagar period.

**Sringeri** : In Karnataka is a place of pilgrimage on the banks of Tung river where the great philosopher *Sankara* founded one of the principal *maths* (monasteries).

**Tamralipti** : A flourishing sea port in ancient India.

**Tanjore** : Was the capital of Cholas. It is situated in the delta of the Cauvery in Tamil Nadu. Also known for Brihadeeswara temple.

**Taxila** : Ancient capital of Gandhara and one of the most renowned cities of ancient north-west India.

**Tirupati** : In Andhra Pradesh State, situated about 100 miles to the north-west of Chennai is one of the holiest places in South India. This hill temple of Sri Venkateswara is an example of early Dravidian architecture and is one of the finest in the south.

**Ujjain** : Known to be the seat of king *Vikrama*, is situated on the bank of Sipra river in Madhya Pradesh. It is one of the seven sacred cities also known as *Avanti*. The Oriental Museum here has some valuable manuscripts and pieces of sculpture. Mahakaleshwar temple here is known as a pilgrimage centre.

**Vaishali** : In the district of Vaishali in Bihar was the capital of famous Vajji kingdom in ancient times.

**Vatapi** : See *Badami*.

**Vikramasila** : Was a great Tantrik University established by the Pala King *Dharampala* in A.D. 810. It was a hotbed of moral corruption, sorcery and idolatry. In AD 1198, the soldiers of Ikhtiar Khilji destroyed the structure to the ground and killed all the monks in the university.

#### Association of Places

Place	Associated with	Place	Associated with
Bardoli	Sardar Patel	Pondicherry	Aurobindo Ghosh
Belur	Rama Krishna Paramhans	Porbandar	Mahatma Gandhi
Chittor	Rana Pratap	Rajghat	Mahatma Gandhi
Fatehpur Sikri	Akbar, the Great	Sabarmati	Mahatma Gandhi
Jallianwala Bagh	Massacre of Indians by the British on April 13, 1919	Seringapatnam	Tipu Sultan
Haldighati	Rana Pratap	Shanti Van	Jawahar Lal Nehru
Kapilvastu	Mahatma Buddha	Shantiniketan	Rabindranath Tagore
Lumbini	Mahatma Buddha	Talwandi	Guru Nanak
Macedonia	Alexander, the Great	Ujjain	Mahavira
Mecca	Prophet Mohammed	Vrindaban (U.P.)	Lord Krishna



### Important Foreign Travellers/Envoys

**Megasthenes (302-298 BC)** : An ambassador of Seleucus Nikator, who visited the court of *Chandragupta Maurya*. He wrote an interesting book '*Indica*' in which he gave a vivid account of Chandragupta Maurya's reign.

**Fa-Hien (405-411 AD)** : He came to India during the reign of *Chandragupta II Vikramaditya*. The object of his visit was to see the holy places of Buddhism and to collect Buddhist books and relics. He was the first Chinese pilgrim to visit India.

**Hiuen-Tsang (630-645 AD)** : He visited India during the reign of *Harshavardhana*.

**I-tsing (671-695 AD)** : A Chinese traveller, he visited India in connection with Buddhism. His work *Biographies of Eminent Monks*, provides us useful information about the social, religious and cultural life of the people of this country.

**Al-Masudi (957 AD)** : An Arab traveller, he has given an extensive account of India in his work '*Muruj-ul-Zahab*'.

**Al-beruni (1024-1030 AD)** : His real name was *Abu Rehan Mahamud* and he came to India along with *Mahmud of Ghazni* during one of his Indian raids. He travelled all over India and wrote a book '*Tahqiq-i-Hind*'. The book deals with the social, religious and political conditions in India.

**Marco Polo (1292-1294 AD)** : A Venetian traveller, he visited South India in 1294 A.D. (during the reign of Pandyan ruler of Madurai, *Madverman Kulshekhara : 1272-1311*). His work '*The Book of Sir Marco Polo*' gives an invaluable account of the economic history of India.

**Ibn Batuta (1333-1347 AD)** : A Moroccan traveller, he visited India during the reign of *Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq*. His book '*Rehla*' (the Travelogue) throws a lot of light on the reign of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq and the geographical, economic and social conditions in India.

**Shihabuddin al-Umari (1348 AD)** : He came from Damascus. He gives a vivid account of India in his book, '*Masalik albsar fi-mamalik al-amsar*'.

**Nicolo Conti (1420-1421 AD)** : A Venetian traveller, he gives a comprehensive account of the Hindu kingdom of Vijayanagar.

**Abdur Razzaq (1443-1444 AD)** : He was a Persian traveller, who came to India and stayed at the court of the Zamorin at Calicut. He has given a vivid account of the Vijayanagar empire, especially of the city. He describes the wealth and luxurious life of the king and the nobles.

**Athanasius Nikitin (1470-1474 AD)** : He was a Russian merchant, who visited South India in 1470. He describes the condition of the Bahmani kingdom under *Muhammad III (1463-82)*.

**Duarte Barbosa (1500-1516 AD)** : He was a Portuguese traveller. He has given a valuable narrative of the government and the people of the Vijayanagar empire.

**Dominigo Paes (1520-1522 AD)** : He was Portuguese traveller, who visited the court of *Krishnadeva Raya* of the Vijayanagar Empire.

**Fernao Nuniz (1535-1537 AD)** : A Portuguese merchant, who visited



the Vijayanagar empire. He wrote the history of the empire from its earliest times of the closing years of *Achyutdeva Raya's* reign.

**John Huguen Von Linschotten (1583 AD)** : He was a Dutch traveller, who has given a valuable account of the social and economic life of South India.

**William Hawkins (1608-1611 AD)** : He was an English ambassador of the British King James I to the court of Jahangir (1609).

**Sir Thomas Roe (1615-1619 AD)** : He was an ambassador of James I, King of England, at the court of Jahangir, the Mughal emperor.

**Franciso Palsaert (1620-1627 AD)** : He was a Dutch traveller, who stayed at Agra and gave a vivid account of the flourishing trade at Surat, Ahmedabad, Broach, Cambay, Lahore, Multan etc.

**Peter Mundy (1630-34 AD)** : He was an Italian traveller to the Mughal empire in the reign of *Shahjahan*. He gives valuable information about the living standard of the common people in the Mughal Empire.

**John Albert de Mandesto (1638 AD)** : He was German traveller, who reached Surat in 1638.

**Jeen Baptiste Tavernier (1638-1663 AD)** : He was a French traveller, who visited India six times. His account covers the reign of *Shahjahan* and *Aurangzeb*.

**Nicolao Manucci (1653-1708 AD)** : He was an Italian traveller, who got service at the court of *Dara Shikoh*.

**Francois Bernier (1656-1717 AD)** : He was French physician and philosopher. Danishmand Khan, a noble of *Aurangzeb*, was his patron.

**Jean de Thevenot (1666 AD)** : He was French traveller, who has given a good account of cities like Ahmedabad, Cambay, Aurangabad and Golconda.

**John Fryer (1672-1681 AD)** : He was an English traveller, who has given a vivid account of Surat and Bombay.

**Gemelli Careri (1695 AD)** : He was an Italian traveller who landed at Daman. His remarks on the Mughal emperor's military organisation and administration are important.

### Abbreviated or Alternative Names

Abbreviated/Alternative Name	Original Name
Andhra Kesari	T. Prakasam
Anna	C.N. Annadurai
Badshah Khan	Abdul Ghaffar Khan
Bapu, Mahatma Gandhi	Mohan Das Karam Chand Gandhi
Beacon of Light of Asia	Subhash Chandra Bose
Chacha	Jawahar Lal Nehru
C.R.	C. Rajagopalachari
Deenbandhu	C.F. Andrews
Deshbandhu	C.R. Das
Enlightened One, The	Mahatma Buddha



Abbreviated/Alternative Name	Original Name
Father of Indian Unrest	Bal Gangadhar Tilak
Father of the Local Self-government	Lord Ripon
Father of the Nation (India)	Mahatma Gandhi
Frontier Gandhi	Abdul Ghaffar Khan
Grand Old Man of India	Dadabhai Naoroji
Gurudev	Rabindranath Tagore
Indian Bismarck	Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
Indian Einstein	Nagarjuna
Indian Napoleon	Samudragupta
J.P./Loknayak	Jayaprakash Narayan
Lal, Bal, Pal	Lala Lajpat Rai, Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Bipin Chandra Pal
Liberator of the Indian Press	Sir Charles Metcalfe
Lion of Punjab (Sher-i-Punjab)	Lala Lajpat Rai
Lokmanya	Bal Gangadhar Tilak
Mahamana	Pt. Mandan Mohan Malaviya
Martin Luther of India	Dayanand Saraswati
Man of Iron / Iron Man of India	Sardar Patel
Netaji	Subhas Chandra Bose
Nightingale of India	Sarojini Naidu
Parrot of India (Tuti-e-Hindustan)	Amir Khusrau
Patriot of Patriots	Subhash Chandra Bose
Punjab Kesari	Lala Lajpat Rai
Scourge of God	Chengiz Khan
Strong Man of India	Sardar Patel

### Important Sayings

'Back to Vedas.'	Dayanand Saraswati
'Dharma Chakra Pravartana.'	Mahatma Buddha
'Dilli Chalo!'	Subhash Chandra Bose's battle cry of Azad Hind Fauj
'Do or Die.'	Mahatma Gandhi (while launching Quit India movement in 1942)
'Give me blood and I will give you freedom.'	Subhas Chandra Bose (in his address to soldiers of Azad Hind Fauj)
'My ultimate aim is to wipe every tear from every eye.'	Jawahar Lal Nehru
'Swaraj is my birthright and I will have it.'	Bal Gangadhar Tilak
'Every blow that is hurled on my back will be a nail in the coffin of the British Empire.'	Lala Lajpat Rai
'The Congress is tottering to its fall and one of my greatest ambitions while in India is to assist it to a peaceful demise.'	Lord Curzon



## Important Battles

Name of the Battle	Year	Battle between	Won by	Significance
<i>Battle of Hydaspes</i>	326 BC	Alexander and Porus	Alexander	Fought on the bank of the Jehlum, which is called 'Hydaspes' in Greek; opened relations between India and the West.
<i>Kalinga War</i>	260 BC	Ashoka and King of Kalinga	Ashoka	Vast destruction and bloodshed changed the attitude of Ashoka and he embraced Buddhism.
<i>First Battle of Tarain or Thaneswar</i>	1191 AD	Prithviraj Chauhan and Mohd Ghori	Prithviraj Chauhan	
<i>Second Battle of Tarain</i>	1192 AD	- do -	Mohd. Ghori	Establishment of an Islamic empire in India
<i>First Battle of Panipat</i>	1526 AD	Ibrahim Lodhi and Babur	Babur	Onset of the Mughal empire in India.
<i>Battle of Khanwa</i>	1527 AD	Babur and Rana Sanga	Babur	
<i>Battle of Chausa</i>	1539 AD	Sher Shah and Humayun	Sher Shah	Sher Shah became emperor of India.
<i>Second Battle of Panipat</i>	1556 AD	Akbar and Hemu	Akbar	Ended Afghan rule, strengthened mughal rule
<i>Battle of Talikota</i>	1565 AD	Combined force of 4 Muslim rulers of Deccan and Ram Raja of Vijayanagar	Muslim forces	Destroyed Hindu kingdom of the Deccan; sealed the fortunes of Vijayanagar empire.
<i>Battle of Haldighati</i>	1576 AD	Rana Pratap and Akbar	Akbar	Rana Pratap fought gallantly and took refuge in a remote fortress.
<i>Battle of Samugarh</i>	1659 AD	Aurangzeb and Imperial forces led by Dara	Aurangzeb	Aurangzeb captured the Mughal throne.
<i>Battle of Plassey</i>	1757 AD	Sirajuddaula and English forces under Clive	English forces	Fought at Plassey. The English became masters of Bengal; foundation of British rule.



Name of the	Year	Battle between	Won by	Significance
<i>Third Battle of Panipat</i>	1761 AD	Ahmed Shah Abdali and Marathas	Ahmed Shah Abdali	Gave a setback to Marathas in the north; sealed destiny of Mughal empire and made British entry easier.
<i>Battle of Buxar</i>	1764 AD	Joint forces of English Muslim and English forces	English forces	Led to English occupation of India.
<i>Third Mysore War</i>	1790 - 1792 AD	English forces and Tipu Sultan	English forces	Tipu Sultan had to sign treaty of the Seringapattam.
<i>Fourth Mysore War</i>	1799 AD	English forces and Tipu Sultan	English forces	Fought at Malavali and brought the Mohammedan dynasty of Mysore to end.
<i>Second Sikh War</i>	1848 - 1849 AD	English forces and Sikhs	English forces	Sikh kingdom came under the British.

### Reforms/Acts

Nomenclature of the Reforms/Acts	Year	During the term of	Significance
<i>Prohibition of Sati &amp; Female infanticide</i>	1829	Lord William Bentick	Supported by Raja Rammohun Roy.
<i>Doctrine of Lapse</i>	1848	Lord Dalhousie	Adoption of sons by rulers in the absence of their natural heirs was banned.
<i>Indian Councils Act</i>	1861	Lord Canning	Envisaged association of Indians with the administration at higher level.
<i>Ilbert Bill</i>	1883	Lord Ripon	To bring Indian and European magistracy on equal footing.
<i>Indian Councils Act</i>	1892	Lord Lansdown	Membership of central legislative councils was enlarged.
<i>Morely-Minto Reforms</i>	1909	Lord Minto II	Separate electorates to widen the gulf between Hindus & Muslims.
<i>Dyarchy</i>	1919	L. Chelmsford	Meaning dual system of Govt.
<i>Jallianwala Bagh Massacre</i>	1919	L. Chelmsford	Massacre at Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar by General Dyer
<i>Rowlatt Act</i>	1919	L. Chelmsford	Extraordinary powers were given to suppress the freedom struggle with General Dyer as the Commandant.



Nomenclature of the Reforms/Acts	Year	During the term of	Significance
<i>Simon commission</i>	1928	Lord Irwin	To report working of the reforms; recommended dyarchy in provinces; India to be constituted as a federation and Indianization of armed forces.
<i>Gandhi-Irwin Pact</i>	1931	Lord Irwin	Congress called off the agitation and agreed to participate in the Second Round Table Conference.
<i>Communal Award</i>	1932	Lord Willingdon	Envisaged communal representation for depressed classes besides Hindus, Muslims and Sikhs.
<i>Separate electorates</i>	1932	Lord Willingdon	(See Communal Award)
<i>Government of India Act</i>	1935	Lord Willingdon	Provided for a federal type of constitution.
<i>Cripps Mission</i>	1942	Lord Linlithgow	Proposed Dominion status for India after the Second World War.
<i>INA Trial</i>	1945	Lord Wavell	INA prisoners of war were trialed at Red Fort, Delhi and Bhulabhai Desai defended them.
<i>Wavell Plan</i>	1945	Lord Wavell	Envisaged constitution of executive council in such a way as to give representation to all major communities in India.
<i>Cabinet Mission Plan</i>	1946	Lord Wavell	Envisaged establishment of Constituent Assembly to frame the Constitution.
<i>Mountbatten Plan</i>	1947	L. Mountbatten	Partition Plan
<i>Indian Independence Act</i>	1947	L. Mountbatten	India partitioned and attained independence.

### Educational Committees/Commissions

Viceroy	Committee/Commission	Year	Chairman	Objectives
Lord Ripon (1880-1884)	Hunter Commission	1882	William Hunter	To study the development in education.
Lord Curzon (1899-1905)	University Commission	1902	Thomas Raleigh	To study the Universities and introduce reforms.
Lord Chelmsford (1916-1921)	Calcutta University Commission	1917	Michael Sadler	To study the condition of University.



Viceroy	Committee/ Commission	Year	Chairman	Objectives
Lord Reading (1921-1926)	Indian Disbandment Committee	1923	Lord Itchcap	To discuss the Central Committee of Education
Lord Wavell (1943-1947)	Sargeant Plan	1944	John Sargeant	To raise the standard of Education like Britain.

#### Famine Commissions

Lord Lytton (1876-1880)	Famine Commission	1880	Richard Strachey	To give relief of faminestricken.
Lord Elgin (1894-1899)	Famine Commission	1897	James Lyall	To give suggestion on earlier reports
Lord Curzon (1899-1905)	Famine Commission	1900	Anthony McDonnell	To give the suggestion on famine report
Lord Wavell (1943-1947)	Famine Inspection Commission	1943- 44	John Woodhood	To investigate in the events of Bengal Famine.

#### Economic Committees/Commissions

Lord Lansdown (1888-1894)	Harshell Committee	1893	Hershell	To give suggestion regarding currency.
Lord Lansdown (1888-1894)	Opium Commission	1893	----	To investigate about the effect of opium on health.
Lord Elgin (1894-1899)	Henry Fowler Commission	1898	H. Fowler	To give suggestions on currency.
Lord Curzon (1899-1905)	Irrigation Commission	1901	Sir Wolvin Scott Monkinj	Toplanfortheexpenditure on Irrigation
Lord Hardinge (1910-1916)	Maclagon Committee	1914- 15	Maclagon	To advise for cooperative finances
Lord Irwin (1926-1931)	Linlithgow Commission	1928	----	To study the problem in agriculture. (Report by Linlithgow)
Lord Irwin (1926-1931)	Whitelay Commission	1929	J.H. Whitelay	To study the condition of labour in Industries and gardens.
Lord Wellington (1931-1936)	Indian Measurement Committee	1935	Lary Hamand	To arrange for inclusion of labour in Federal Assembly.
Lord Linlithgow (1936-1943)	National Planning Committee	1938	Jawaharlal Nehru	To prepare economic plan.



Viceroy	Committee/ Commission	Year	Chairman	Objectives
<b>Administrative Committees/Commissions</b>				
Lord Dufferin (1884-1886)	Etkinson Commission	1886	Charles Etkinson	To involve more Indians in Civil Service
Lord Curzon (1899-1905)	Fraser Commission	1902	Fraser	To investigate the working of police
Lord Hardinge (1910-1916)	Royal Commission on Civil Service	1912	Lord Islington	To give 25% high posts to Indian
Lord Reading (1921-1926)	Royal Commission	1924	Lord Lee	To remove defects of Civil Service
Lord Reading (1921-1926)	Sandhurst Committee	1926	Andrews Skeen	To suggest Indianization of Indian army
Lord Irwin (1926-1931)	Butler Committee	1927	Hercourt Butler	To Examine nature of crown relation with native States

### Important Congress Session

Year	Place	Importance
1885	Bombay	At Gokuldas Tejpal Sanskrit College, 72 delegates
1886	Calcutta	436 delegates
1887	Madras	Tayabji became first Muslim President.
1888	Allahabad	George Yule became first English President
1889	Bombay	Congress represented all areas of British India.
1890	Calcutta	Decision taken to organise a session of Congress in London.
1895	Poona	Demand for a representative body only for educated class
1898	Madras	Social reform was set as the main goal.
1907	Surat	Congress split.
1908	Madras	Constitution for the Congress.
1916	Lucknow	Congress merger. Pact with Muslim League, Gandhi attended.
1917	Calcutta	Annie Besant became 1st women President.
1920	Nagpur	Gandhian programme was adopted. Change in congress constitution.
1921	Ahmedabad	Hasrat Mohani demanded for complete independence.
1922	Gaya	Formation of Swaraj Party.
1924	Belgaum	Gandhi became President.
1925	Kanpur	Sarojini Naidu became 1st Indian women President.
1927	Madras	Nehru and S. C. Bose moved resolution for independence and it was passed for the 1st time.



Year	Place	Importance
1928	Calcutta	First All India Youth Congress.
1929	Lahore	'Poorna Swaraj' (Complete Independence) resolution and pledge for Independence day on 26 January 1930.
1931	Karachi	Resolution for Fundamental Rights and National Economic Policy.
1934	Bombay	Formation of Congress Socialist Party.
1936	Lucknow	Support for socialism through democracy.
1937	Faizpur	Demand for Constituent Assembly.
1938	Haripura	Purna Swaraj was to cover also princely states.
1939	Tripuri	S. C. Bose resigned due to difference with Gandhi, after resignation Rajendra Prasad became of INC President.

### Governor-General and Viceroy

#### Governors of Bengal (1757-74)

**Robert Clive** : Governor of Bengal during 1757-60 and again during 1765-67 and established Dual Government in Bengal from 1765-72.

**Vanistart (1760-65)** : The Battle of Buxar (1764).

**Cartier (1769-72)** : Bengal Famine (1770).

**Warren Hastings (1772-74)** : Abolished Dual Government (1772).

#### Governor-Generals of Bengal (1774-1833)

**Warren Hastings (1774-85)** : Became Governor-General in 1774 through the Regulating Act, 1773; Wrote introduction to the first English translation of the 'Gita' by Charles Wilkins; Founded the Asiatic Society of Bengal with William Jones in 1784.

**Revenue Reforms** : Auctioned the right to collect land revenue to the highest bidder; Divided Bengal into districts and appointed collectors and other revenue officials.

**Judicial Reforms** : Started Diwani and Faujdari adalats at the district level and Sadar diwani and Nizamat adalats (appellate courts) at Calcutta; Redefined Hindu and Muslim laws; A translation of the code in Sanskrit appeared in 1776 under the title of "Code of Gentoo laws".

**Wars** : Rohilla War (1774); 1st Anglo-Maratha War (1776-82); 2nd Anglo-Mysore War (1780-84).

**Lord Cornwallis (1786-93)** : First person to codify laws in 1793. The code separated the revenue administration from the administration of justice; Created post of district judge; Introduced Permanent Settlement in Bengal (1793); Cornwallis is called 'the father of civil service in India'.

**Wars** : 3rd Anglo-Mysore War (defeat of Tipu and the Treaty of Seringapatnam, 1792)

**Sir John Shore (1793-98)** : Introduced the 1st Charter Act (1793).

**Wars** : Battle of Khanda between Nizam and the Marathas (1795)

**Lord Wellesley (1798-1805)** : Started Subsidiary Alliance system to achieve British paramountcy in India, Nizam Ali (Nizam of Hyderabad)



was the first Indian native ruler to accept the system of subsidiary Alliance (1798); Madras Presidency was formed during his tenure.

**Wars :** 4th Anglo-Mysore War (1799)—defeat and the death of Tipu Sultan; 2nd Anglo-Maratha War (1803-05)—defeat of the Scindia, the Bhonsle and the Holkar; Treaty of Bassein (1802).

**George Barlow (1805-1807) :** Vellore Mutiny (1806)

**Lord Minto I (1807-1813) :** Concluded Treaty of Amritsar with Ranjit Singh (1809); Charter Act of 1813 was passed.

**Lord Hastings (1813-1823) :** Adopted the policy of intervention and war.

**Wars:** Anglo-Nepalese War (1813-23); 3rd Anglo-Maratha War (1817-18). Hastings forced humiliating treaties on Peshwa and the Scindia; Introduced the Ryotwari settlement in Madras by Thomas Munro, the Governor.

**Lord Amherst (1823-28) :** Wars: 1st Burmese War (1824-26); Acquisition of territories in Malay Peninsula; Capture of Bharatpur (1826).

**Lord W. Bentick (1828-33) :** Most liberal and enlightened Governor-General of India; Regarded as 'the Father of Modern Western Education in India'; Abolished Sati and other cruel rites (1829); Annexation of Mysore (1831). Concluded a treaty of perpetual friendship with Ranjit Singh (1831); Passed the Charter Act of 1833, which provided that no Indian subject of Company was to be debarred from holding an office on account of his religion, place of birth, descent and colour.

#### **Governor Generals of india (1833-58)**

**Lord W. Bentick (1833-35) :** Macaulay's minutes on education were accepted declaring that English should be the official language of India; Abolished provincial courts of appeal and circuit set up by Cornwallis, appointment of commissioners of revenue and circuit.

**Wars :** Annexed Coorg (1834), Central Cachar (1834) on the plea of misgovernment.

**Sir Charles Metcalfe (1834-1836) :** Passed the famous Press Law, which liberated the press in India.

**Lord Auckland (1836-42) :** 1st Anglo-Afghan War (1836-42)—great blow to the prestige of the British in India.

**Lord Ellenborough (1842-44) :** Brought an end to the Afghan War; Annexation of Sindh (1843); War with Gwalior (1843); Abolished slavery (1843).

**Lord Hardings I (1844-48) :** 1st Anglo-Sikh war (1845-46) and the Treaty of Lahore, 1846 (marked the end of Sikh sovereignty in India); Gave preference to English educated in employment.

**Lord Dalhousie (1848-56) :** Abolished Titles and Pensions, Widow Remarriage Act (1856).

**Wars :** Introduced Doctrine of Lapse (Captured Satara (1848), Jaitpur and Sambhalpur (1849), Baghat (1850), Udaipur (1852), Jhansi (1853) and Nagpur (1854); Fought 2nd Anglo-Sikh War (1848-49) and annexed the whole of the Punjab; 2nd Anglo-Burmese War (1852) and annexation of Lower Burma or Pegu; Annexation of Berar in 1853; Annexation of Avadh in 1856 on charges of mal-administration.



**Administrative Reforms :** Introduced the system of Centralized control in the newly acquired territories known as Non-Regulation system; Raised Gurkha regiments.

**Educational Reforms :** Recommended the Thomsonian system of Vernacular education for whole of the Northwestern Provinces (1853); Wood's Educational Despatch of 1854 and opening of Anglo-Vernacular Schools and Government Colleges; An Engineering College was established at Roorkee.

**Public Works :** Started the first railway line in 1853 (connecting Bombay with Thana); Started electric telegraph service. Laid the basis of the modern postal system (1854); A separate public works department was set up for the first time; Started work on the Grand Trunk Road and developed the harbours of Karachi, Bombay and Calcutta.

**Lord Canning (1856-58) :** The last Governor General of India; Revolt of 1857; Passed the Act of 1858, which ended the rule of the East India Company. Withdrew Doctrine of Lapse.

#### **Governer Generals and Viceroys (1858-1947)**

**Lord Canning (1858-62) :** The Indian Councils Act of 1861 was passed, which proved to be a landmark in the constitutional history of India; The Indian Penal Code of Criminal Procedure (1859) was passed; The Indian High Court Act (1861) was enacted; Income Tax was introduced for the first time in 1858; The Universities of Calcutta, Bombay and Madras founded in 1857; The Indigo riots in Bengal (1860).

**Lord Elgin I (1862-63) :** Wahabi Movement (Pan-Islamic Movement)

**Sir John Lawrence (1864-69) :** Telegraphic communication was opened with Europe; High Courts were established at Calcutta, Bombay and Madras in 1865; Expanded canal works and railways; Bhutan War (1865); Advocated State-managed railways; Created the Indian Forests Department and reorganized the native judicial service.

**Lord Mayo (1869-72) :** Introduced financial decentralization in India, Established Mayo College at Ajmer for the princes; Organised the Statistical Survey of India, Established the Department of Agriculture and Commerce, He was the only Viceroy to be murdered in office by a convict in Andamans in 1872, Introduction of State Railways.

**Lord Northbrook (1872-76) :** Kuka Movement of Punjab took rebellious turn during his period.

**Lord Lytton (1876-80) :** Most infamous Governor-General, Pursued free trade and abolished duties on 29 British manufactured goods which accelerated drain of wealth of India, Arranged the Grand Darbar in Delhi (in 1877) when the country was suffering from a severe famine; Passed the Royal Title Act (1876) and Queen Victoriya was declared as the Kaisar-i-Hind; Arms Act (1878) made mandatory for Indians to acquire license for arms; Passed the infamous Vernacular Press Act (1878); Proposed the plan of Statutory Civil Service in 1878-79 and lowered the maximum age limit from 21 to 19 years, the 2nd Afghan war proved a failure.



**Lord Ripon (1880-84)** : Repeal of the Vernacular Press Act, 1882; The First Factory Act, 1881 to improve labour condition, Resolution of Local Self Government in 1882, Resolution on Land Revenue Policy; Appointed Hunter Commission (for education reforms) in 1882; The Ilbert Bill controversy erupted during his time (1883).

**Lord Dufferin (1884-88)** : 3rd Burmese War (Annexation of upper and lower Burma in 1885, Establishment of Indian National Congress in 1885.

**Lord Lansdowne (1888-94)** : The Factory Act of 1891; Categorization of Civil Services into imperial, provincial and subordinate; Indian Council Act of 1892 (introduced elections which was indirect); Appointment of the Durand Commission to define the line between British India and Afghanistan (1893).

**Lord Elgin II (1894-99)** : The Munda uprising (Birsa Munda) of 1899, Convention delimiting the frontier between China and India was ratified, Great famine of 1896-97, Lyall Commission appointed after famine (1897), Assassination of two British officials—Rand and Amherst—by Chapekar Brothers in 1897.

**Lord Curzon (1899-1905)** : Appointed a Police Commission in 1902 under Andrew Frazer; Set up the Universities Commission and accordingly the Indian Universities Act of 1904 was passed; Set up the Department of Commerce and Industry; Calcutta Corporation Act (1899); Passed the Indian Coinage and Paper Currency Act (in 1899) and put India on a gold standard; Partition of Bengal took place in 1905 (It was cardinal blunder of Curzon); The idea to build Victoria Memorial (Calcutta) was conceived by Lord Curzon. The foundation stone of memorial was laid in 1906 and it was opened in 1921.

**Lord Minto II (1905-10)** : Swadeshi Movement (1905-08); Foundation of the Muslim League, 1906; Surat session and split in the Congress (1907), Newspapers Act, 1908; Morley-Minto Reforms, 1909.

**Lord Hardinge (1910-16)** : Annulment of the partition of Bengal (1911), Transfer of capital from Calcutta to Delhi (1911); Delhi Darbar and Coronation of King George V and Queen Mary (1911); Establishment of Hindu Mahasabha by Madan Mohan Malviya (1915).

**Lord Chelmsford (1916-21)** : Home Rule Movement launched by Tilak and Annie Besant (1916); Lucknow Pact between Congress and Muslim League (1916); Arrival of Gandhi in India (1915); Champaran Satyagraha (1917); Montague's August Declaration (1917); Kheda Satyagraha and Satyagraha at Ahmedabad (1918); Government of India Act (1919), Repressive Rowlatt Act (1919); Jalianwala Bagh Massacre (April 13, 1919), appointment of Hunter Commission to probe Jalianwala Bagh Massacre (Oct. 19, 1919), Khilafat Movement (1920-22); Non-Cooperation Movement (1920-22).

**Lord Reading (1921-26)** : Criminal Law Amendment Act and abolition of cotton excise; Repeal of Press Act of 1910 and Rowlatt Act of 1919; Violent Moplah rebellion in Kerala (1921); Foundation of CPI (1921); Chauri Chaura incident (1922); Foundation of Swaraj Party (1923); Kakori Train Dacoity (1925); Foundation of RSS (1925); Murder of Swami Shardhanand (1926).



**Lord Irwin (1926-31) :** Simon Commission announced in 1927; Butler Commission (1927); Nehru Report (1928); 14 points of Jinnah (1929); Lahore session of Congress and 'Poorna Swaraj' declaration (1929); Civil Disobedience Movement (1930); Dandi March (1930); Ist Round Table Conference (1930); Gandhi-Irwin Pact (1931).

**Lord Willingdon (1931-36) :** IInd Round Table Conference (1931); Civil Disobedience Movement (1932); Announcement of MacDonald's Communal Award (1932); IIInd Round Table Conference; Foundation of Congress Socialist Party — CSP (1934); Government of India Act (1935); Burma separated from India (1935), All India Kisan Sabha (1936).

**Lord Linlithgow (1936-43) :** General Election (1936-37); Congress ministries in 1937 and Resignation of Congress ministries in 1939; 'Deliverance Day' by Muslim League in 1939; Foundation of forward Block by S.C. Bose (1939); Lahore Resolution (1940); August Offer (1940); Cripps Mission (1942); Quit India Movement (1942).

**Lord Wavell (1943-1947) :** C. R. Formula 1944; Wavell Plan and Shimla Conference in 1945; End of IIInd World War in 1945; INA Trials in 1945; Naval mutiny in 1946; Cabinet Mission, 1946 and acceptance of its proposals by Congress; Direct Action Day by the Muslim League on 16th August, 1946.

**Lord Mountbatten (Mar-Aug 1947) :** Announced the 3 June, 1947 Plan; Introduction of Indian Independence Bill in the house of Commons; Appointment of 2 boundary commissions under Sir Cyril Radcliffe.

**Governor Generals of Free India (1947-50)**

**Lord Mountbatten (1947-48) :** The first Governor General of free India; Kashmir acceded to India (Oct., 1947); Murder of Gandhi (Jan. 30, 1948).

**C. Rajagopalachari (June 1948 – Jan. 25, 1950) :** The last Governor General of free India; The only Indian Governor-General.

